

# Fixed-Point Toolbox

For Use with **MATLAB**®

- Computation
- Visualization
- Programming

User's Guide

*Version 1*



## How to Contact The MathWorks:



www.mathworks.com  
comp.soft-sys.matlab  
www.mathworks.com/contact\_TS.html

Web  
Newsgroup  
Technical Support



suggest@mathworks.com  
bugs@mathworks.com  
doc@mathworks.com  
service@mathworks.com  
info@mathworks.com

Product enhancement suggestions  
Bug reports  
Documentation error reports  
Order status, license renewals, passcodes  
Sales, pricing, and general information



508-647-7000 (Phone)



508-647-7001 (Fax)



The MathWorks, Inc.  
3 Apple Hill Drive  
Natick, MA 01760-2098

For contact information about worldwide offices, see the MathWorks Web site.

### *Fixed-Point Toolbox User's Guide*

© COPYRIGHT 2004–2006 by The MathWorks, Inc.

The software described in this document is furnished under a license agreement. The software may be used or copied only under the terms of the license agreement. No part of this manual may be photocopied or reproduced in any form without prior written consent from The MathWorks, Inc.

**FEDERAL ACQUISITION:** This provision applies to all acquisitions of the Program and Documentation by, for, or through the federal government of the United States. By accepting delivery of the Program or Documentation, the government hereby agrees that this software or documentation qualifies as commercial computer software or commercial computer software documentation as such terms are used or defined in FAR 12.212, DFARS Part 227.72, and DFARS 252.227-7014. Accordingly, the terms and conditions of this Agreement and only those rights specified in this Agreement, shall pertain to and govern the use, modification, reproduction, release, performance, display, and disclosure of the Program and Documentation by the federal government (or other entity acquiring for or through the federal government) and shall supersede any conflicting contractual terms or conditions. If this License fails to meet the government's needs or is inconsistent in any respect with federal procurement law, the government agrees to return the Program and Documentation, unused, to The MathWorks, Inc.

### **Trademarks**

MATLAB, Simulink, Stateflow, Handle Graphics, Real-Time Workshop, and xPC TargetBox are registered trademarks of The MathWorks, Inc.

Other product or brand names are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective holders.

### **Patents**

The MathWorks products are protected by one or more U.S. patents. Please see [www.mathworks.com/patents](http://www.mathworks.com/patents) for more information.

**Revision History**

June 2004	First printing	New for Version 1.0 (Release 14)
October 2004	Online only	Version 1.1 (Release 14SP1)
March 2005	Online only	Version 1.2 (Release 14SP2)
September 2005	Online only	Version 1.3 (Release 14SP3)
October 2005	Second printing	Version 1.3
March 2006	Online only	Version 1.4 (R2006a)



## Getting Started

### 1

<b>What Is the Fixed-Point Toolbox?</b> .....	<b>1-2</b>
Features .....	<b>1-2</b>
<b>Getting Help</b> .....	<b>1-4</b>
Getting Help in This Document .....	<b>1-4</b>
Getting Help at the MATLAB Command Line .....	<b>1-4</b>
<b>Display Settings</b> .....	<b>1-6</b>
<b>Demos</b> .....	<b>1-9</b>

## Fixed-Point Concepts

### 2

<b>Fixed-Point Data Types</b> .....	<b>2-2</b>
<b>Scaling</b> .....	<b>2-4</b>
<b>Precision and Range</b> .....	<b>2-5</b>
Range .....	<b>2-5</b>
Precision .....	<b>2-6</b>
<b>Arithmetic Operations</b> .....	<b>2-8</b>
Modulo Arithmetic .....	<b>2-9</b>
Two's Complement .....	<b>2-9</b>
Addition and Subtraction .....	<b>2-10</b>
Multiplication .....	<b>2-11</b>
Casts .....	<b>2-17</b>

<b>fi Objects Compared to C Integer Data Types</b> .....	<b>2-20</b>
Integer Data Types .....	<b>2-20</b>
Unary Conversions .....	<b>2-22</b>
Binary Conversions .....	<b>2-23</b>
Overflow Handling .....	<b>2-25</b>

## Working with fi Objects

### 3

<b>Constructing fi Objects</b> .....	<b>3-2</b>
Examples of Constructing fi Objects .....	<b>3-3</b>
<b>fi Object Properties</b> .....	<b>3-10</b>
Data Properties .....	<b>3-10</b>
fimath Properties .....	<b>3-10</b>
numerictype Properties .....	<b>3-11</b>
Setting Fixed-Point Properties at Object Creation .....	<b>3-12</b>
Using Direct Property Referencing with fi .....	<b>3-13</b>
<b>fi Object Functions</b> .....	<b>3-15</b>

## Working with fimath Objects

### 4

<b>Constructing fimath Objects</b> .....	<b>4-2</b>
<b>fimath Object Properties</b> .....	<b>4-4</b>
Setting fimath Properties at Object Creation .....	<b>4-5</b>
Using Direct Property Referencing with fimath .....	<b>4-6</b>
Setting fimath Properties in the Model Explorer .....	<b>4-7</b>
<b>Using fimath Objects to Perform Fixed-Point</b>	
<b>Arithmetic</b> .....	<b>4-9</b>
[Slope Bias] Arithmetic .....	<b>4-13</b>

<b>Using fimath to Share Arithmetic Rules</b> .....	<b>4-16</b>
<b>Using fimath ProductMode and SumMode</b> .....	<b>4-18</b>
FullPrecision .....	4-18
KeepLSB .....	4-19
KeepMSB .....	4-20
SpecifyPrecision .....	4-21
<b>fimath Object Functions</b> .....	<b>4-23</b>

## Working with fipref Objects

# 5

<b>Constructing fipref Objects</b> .....	<b>5-2</b>
<b>fipref Object Properties</b> .....	<b>5-3</b>
Setting fipref Properties at Object Creation .....	5-3
Using Direct Property Referencing with fipref .....	5-3
<b>Using fipref Objects to Set Display Preferences</b> .....	<b>5-5</b>
<b>Using fipref Objects to Set Logging Preferences</b> .....	<b>5-7</b>
Logging Overflows and Underflows as Warnings .....	5-7
Accessing Logged Information with Functions .....	5-10
<b>Using fipref Objects to Set Data Type Override Preferences</b> .....	<b>5-12</b>
Using Data Type Override to Help Set Fixed-Point Scaling .....	5-13
<b>fipref Object Functions</b> .....	<b>5-15</b>

## Working with numerictype Objects

### 6

<b>Constructing numerictype Objects</b> .....	<b>6-2</b>
Examples of Constructing numerictype Objects .....	<b>6-3</b>
<b>numerictype Object Properties</b> .....	<b>6-6</b>
Setting numerictype Properties at Object Creation .....	<b>6-6</b>
Using Direct Property Referencing with numerictype Objects .....	<b>6-7</b>
Setting numerictype Properties in the Model Explorer ...	<b>6-8</b>
<b>The numerictype Structure</b> .....	<b>6-10</b>
Properties That Affect the Slope .....	<b>6-11</b>
Stored Integer Value and Real World Value .....	<b>6-12</b>
<b>Using numerictype Objects to Share Data Type and Scaling Settings</b> .....	<b>6-13</b>
<b>numerictype Object Functions</b> .....	<b>6-16</b>

## Working with quantizer Objects

### 7

<b>Constructing quantizer Objects</b> .....	<b>7-2</b>
<b>quantizer Object Properties</b> .....	<b>7-3</b>
<b>Quantizing Data with quantizer Objects</b> .....	<b>7-4</b>
<b>Transformations for Quantized Data</b> .....	<b>7-6</b>
<b>quantizer Object Functions</b> .....	<b>7-7</b>



## Interoperability with Other Products

# 8

<b>Using fi Objects with Simulink</b> .....	<b>8-2</b>
Reading Fixed-Point Data from the Workspace .....	<b>8-2</b>
Writing Fixed-Point Data to the Workspace .....	<b>8-2</b>
Setting the Value and Data Type of Block Parameters ....	<b>8-6</b>
Logging Fixed-Point Signals .....	<b>8-6</b>
Accessing Fixed-Point Block Data During Simulation ....	<b>8-6</b>
<b>Using fi Objects with Signal Processing Blockset</b> .....	<b>8-8</b>
Reading Fixed-Point Signals from the Workspace .....	<b>8-8</b>
Writing Fixed-Point Signals to the Workspace .....	<b>8-8</b>
<b>Using the Fixed-Point Toolbox with Embedded</b>	
<b>MATLAB</b> .....	<b>8-13</b>
Supported Functions and Limitations of Fixed-Point	
Embedded MATLAB .....	<b>8-13</b>
Using the Model Explorer with Fixed-Point Embedded	
MATLAB .....	<b>8-18</b>
Example: Implementing a Fixed-Point Direct Form FIR	
Using Embedded MATLAB .....	<b>8-22</b>
<b>Using fi Objects with Filter Design Toolbox</b> .....	<b>8-32</b>

## Property Reference

# 9

<b>fi Object Properties</b> .....	<b>9-2</b>
bin .....	<b>9-2</b>
data .....	<b>9-2</b>
dec .....	<b>9-2</b>
double .....	<b>9-2</b>
fimath .....	<b>9-2</b>
hex .....	<b>9-3</b>
int .....	<b>9-3</b>
NumericType .....	<b>9-3</b>
oct .....	<b>9-5</b>

<b>fi<code>math</code> Object Properties</b> .....	<b>9-6</b>
CastBeforeSum .....	9-6
MaxProductWordLength .....	9-6
MaxSumWordLength .....	9-6
OverflowMode .....	9-6
ProductBias .....	9-7
ProductFixedExponent .....	9-7
ProductFractionLength .....	9-7
ProductMode .....	9-7
ProductSlope .....	9-9
ProductSlopeAdjustmentFactor .....	9-9
ProductWordLength .....	9-9
RoundMode .....	9-10
SumBias .....	9-10
SumFixedExponent .....	9-10
SumFractionLength .....	9-11
SumMode .....	9-11
SumSlope .....	9-12
SumSlopeAdjustmentFactor .....	9-13
SumWordLength .....	9-13
<b>fi<code>pref</code> Object Properties</b> .....	<b>9-14</b>
DataTypeOverride .....	9-14
FimathDisplay .....	9-14
LoggingMode .....	9-14
NumericTypeDisplay .....	9-15
NumberDisplay .....	9-15
<b>numeric<code>type</code> Object Properties</b> .....	<b>9-17</b>
Bias .....	9-17
DataType .....	9-17
DataTypeMode .....	9-17
FixedExponent .....	9-18
FractionLength .....	9-19
Scaling .....	9-19
Signed .....	9-19
Slope .....	9-20
SlopeAdjustmentFactor .....	9-20
WordLength .....	9-20
<b>quantizer Object Properties</b> .....	<b>9-21</b>
DataMode .....	9-21
Format .....	9-21

OverflowMode .....	9-22
RoundMode .....	9-23

## Functions — By Category

# 10

<b>Bitwise Functions</b> .....	10-2
<b>Constructor and Property Functions</b> .....	10-2
<b>Data Manipulation Functions</b> .....	10-3
<b>Data Type Functions</b> .....	10-5
<b>Data Quantizing Functions</b> .....	10-5
<b>Element-Wise Logical Operator Functions</b> .....	10-6
<b>Math Operation Functions</b> .....	10-6
<b>Matrix Manipulation Functions</b> .....	10-7
<b>Plotting Functions</b> .....	10-9
<b>Radix Conversion Functions</b> .....	10-12
<b>Relational Operator Functions</b> .....	10-13
<b>Statistics Functions</b> .....	10-13
<b>Subscripted Assignment and Reference Functions</b> ....	10-14
<b>fi Object Functions</b> .....	10-15

<b>fimath Object Functions</b> .....	<b>10-17</b>
<b>fipref Object Functions</b> .....	<b>10-18</b>
<b>numerictype Object Functions</b> .....	<b>10-19</b>
<b>quantizer Object Functions</b> .....	<b>10-20</b>

## **Functions — Alphabetical List**

---

**11**

**Glossary**

---

**Index**

---

# Getting Started

---

What Is the Fixed-Point Toolbox?  
(p. 1-2)

Describes the Fixed-Point Toolbox  
and its major features

Getting Help (p. 1-4)

Tells you how to get help on  
Fixed-Point Toolbox objects,  
properties, and functions

Display Settings (p. 1-6)

Describes the `fi` object display  
settings used in the code examples  
in this User's Guide

Demos (p. 1-9)

Lists the Fixed-Point Toolbox demos

## What Is the Fixed-Point Toolbox?

The Fixed-Point Toolbox provides fixed-point data types in MATLAB® and enables algorithm development by providing fixed-point arithmetic. The Fixed-Point Toolbox enables you to create the following types of objects:

- `fi` — Defines a fixed-point numeric object in the MATLAB workspace. Each `fi` object is composed of value data, a `fimath` object, and a `numericity` object.
- `fimath` — Governs how overloaded arithmetic operators work with `fi` objects
- `fipref` — Defines the display, logging, and data type override preferences of `fi` objects
- `numericity` — Defines the data type and scaling attributes of `fi` objects
- `quantizer` — Quantizes data sets

### Features

The Fixed-Point Toolbox provides you with

- The ability to define fixed-point data types, scaling, and rounding and overflow methods in the MATLAB workspace
- Bit-true real and complex simulation
- Basic fixed-point arithmetic
  - Arithmetic operators `+`, `-`, `*`, `.*` for binary point-only and real [Slope Bias] signals
  - Division using the `divide` function for binary point-only signals
- Arbitrary word length up to `intmax('uint16')` bits
- Logging of minimums, maximums, overflows, and underflows
- Data type override with singles, doubles, or scaled doubles
- Relational, logical, and bitwise operators
- Statistics functions such as `max` and `min`
- Conversions between binary, hex, double, and built-in integers

- Interoperability with Simulink®, Signal Processing Blockset, Embedded MATLAB, and Filter Design Toolbox
- Compatibility with the Simulink To Workspace and From Workspace blocks

## Getting Help

This section tells you how to get help for the Fixed-Point Toolbox in this document and at the MATLAB command line.

### Getting Help in This Document

The objects of the Fixed-Point Toolbox are discussed in the following chapters:

- Chapter 3, “Working with fi Objects”
- Chapter 4, “Working with fimath Objects”
- Chapter 5, “Working with fipref Objects”
- Chapter 6, “Working with numericitype Objects”
- Chapter 7, “Working with quantizer Objects”

To get in-depth information about the properties of these objects, refer to Chapter 9, “Property Reference”.

To get in-depth information about the functions of these objects, refer to the Function Reference.

### Getting Help at the MATLAB Command Line

To get command-line help for Fixed-Point Toolbox objects, type

```
help objectname
```

For example,

```
help fi
help fimath
help fipref
help numericitype
help quantizer
```



To invoke Help Browser documentation for Fixed-Point Toolbox functions from the MATLAB command line, type

```
doc fixedpoint/functionname
```

For example,

```
doc fixedpoint/int
doc fixedpoint/add
doc fixedpoint/savefipref
doc fixedpoint/quantize
```

## Display Settings

In the Fixed-Point Toolbox, the display of `fi` objects is determined by the `fipref` object. Throughout this User's Guide, code examples of `fi` objects are usually shown as they appear when the `fipref` properties are set as follows:

- `NumberDisplay` — 'RealWorldValue'
- `NumericTypeDisplay` — 'full'
- `FimathDisplay` — 'none'

For example,

```
p = fipref('NumberDisplay', 'RealWorldValue',...  
         'NumericTypeDisplay', 'full', 'FimathDisplay', 'none')
```

```
p =
```

```
         NumberDisplay: 'RealWorldValue'  
NumericTypeDisplay: 'full'  
         FimathDisplay: 'none'  
         LoggingMode: 'Off'  
         DataTypeOverride: 'ForceOff'
```

```
a = fi(pi)
```

```
a =
```

```
3.1416
```

```
         DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: binary point scaling  
         Signed: true  
         WordLength: 16  
         FractionLength: 13
```

In other cases, it makes sense to also show the fimath object display:

- NumberDisplay — 'RealWorldValue'
- NumericTypeDisplay — 'full'
- FimathDisplay — 'full'

For example,

```
p = fipref('NumberDisplay', 'RealWorldValue',...  
         'NumericTypeDisplay', 'full', 'FimathDisplay', 'full')
```

```
p =
```

```
         NumberDisplay: 'RealWorldValue'  
NumericTypeDisplay: 'full'  
         FimathDisplay: 'full'  
         LoggingMode: 'Off'  
         DataTypeOverride: 'ForceOff'
```

```
a = fi(pi)
```

```
a =
```

```
3.1416
```

```
         DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: binary point scaling  
         Signed: true  
         WordLength: 16  
         FractionLength: 13
```

```
         RoundMode: nearest  
         OverflowMode: saturate  
         ProductMode: FullPrecision  
MaxProductWordLength: 128  
         SumMode: FullPrecision  
MaxSumWordLength: 128  
         CastBeforeSum: true
```

For more information, refer to Chapter 5, “Working with fipref Objects”.

## Demos

You can access demos in the **Demos** tab of the **Help Navigator** window. The Fixed-Point Toolbox includes the following demos:

- **Number Circle** — Illustrates the definitions of unsigned and signed two's complement integer and fixed-point numbers
- **fi Basics** — Demonstrates the basic use of the fixed-point object `fi`
- **fi Binary Point Scaling** — Explains binary point-only scaling
- **Fixed-Point Doubles Override, Min/Max Logging, and Scaling** — Steps through the workflow of using doubles override and min/max logging in the Fixed-Point Toolbox to choose appropriate scaling for a fixed-point algorithm
- **Fixed-Point C Development** — Shows how to use the parameters from a fixed-point MATLAB program in a fixed-point C program
- **Fixed-Point Algorithm Development** — Presents the development and verification of a simple fixed-point algorithm
- **Fixed-Point Fast Fourier Transform (FFT)** — Provides an example of converting a textbook Fast Fourier Transform algorithm into fixed-point MATLAB code and then into fixed-point C code
- **Analysis of a Fixed-Point State-Space System with Limit Cycles** — Demonstrates a limit cycle detection routine applied to a state-space system
- **Quantization Error** — Demonstrates the statistics of the error when signals are quantized using various rounding methods



# Fixed-Point Concepts

---

Fixed-Point Data Types (p. 2-2)	Defines fixed-point data types
Scaling (p. 2-4)	Discusses the types of scaling used in the Fixed-Point Toolbox; binary point-only and [Slope Bias]
Precision and Range (p. 2-5)	Discusses the concepts behind arithmetic operations in the Fixed-Point Toolbox.
Arithmetic Operations (p. 2-8)	Introduces the concepts behind arithmetic operations in the Fixed-Point Toolbox
fi Objects Compared to C Integer Data Types (p. 2-20)	Compares ANSI C integer data type ranges, conversions, and exception handling with those of fi objects

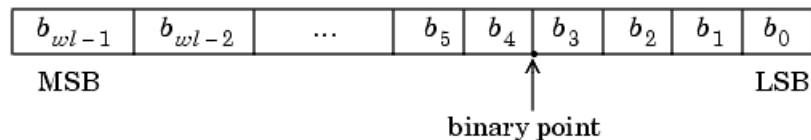
## Fixed-Point Data Types

In digital hardware, numbers are stored in binary words. A binary word is a fixed-length sequence of bits (1's and 0's). How hardware components or software functions interpret this sequence of 1's and 0's is defined by the data type.

Binary numbers are represented as either fixed-point or floating-point data types. This chapter discusses many terms and concepts relating to fixed-point numbers, data types, and mathematics.

A fixed-point data type is characterized by the word length in bits, the position of the binary point, and whether it is signed or unsigned. The position of the binary point is the means by which fixed-point values are scaled and interpreted.

For example, a binary representation of a generalized fixed-point number (either signed or unsigned) is shown below:



where

- $b_i$  is the  $i$ th binary digit.
- $wl$  is the word length in bits.
- $b_{wl-1}$  is the location of the most significant, or highest, bit (MSB).
- $b_0$  is the location of the least significant, or lowest, bit (LSB).
- The binary point is shown four places to the left of the LSB. In this example, therefore, the number is said to have four fractional bits, or a fraction length of four.



Fixed-point data types can be either signed or unsigned. Signed binary fixed-point numbers are typically represented in one of three ways:

- Sign/magnitude
- One's complement
- Two's complement

Two's complement is the most common representation of signed fixed-point numbers and is the only representation used by the Fixed-Point Toolbox. Refer to "Two's Complement" on page 2-9 for more information.

## Scaling

Fixed-point numbers can be encoded according to the scheme

$$\text{real-world value} = (\text{slope} \times \text{integer}) + \text{bias}$$

where the slope can be expressed as

$$\text{slope} = \text{fractional slope} \times 2^{\text{fixed exponent}}$$

The integer is sometimes called the *stored integer*. This is the raw binary number, in which the binary point assumed to be at the far right of the word. In the Fixed-Point Toolbox, the negative of the fixed exponent is often referred to as the *fraction length*.

The slope and bias together represent the scaling of the fixed-point number. In a number with zero bias, only the slope affects the scaling. A fixed-point number that is only scaled by binary point position is equivalent to a number in [Slope Bias] representation that has a bias equal to zero and a fractional slope equal to one. This is referred to as binary point-only scaling or power-of-two scaling:

$$\text{real-world value} = 2^{\text{fixed exponent}} \times \text{integer}$$

or

$$\text{real-world value} = 2^{-\text{fraction length}} \times \text{integer}$$

The Fixed-Point Toolbox supports both binary point-only scaling and [Slope Bias] scaling.

---

**Note** For examples of binary point-only scaling, see the Fixed-Point Toolbox demo "fi Binary Point Scaling."

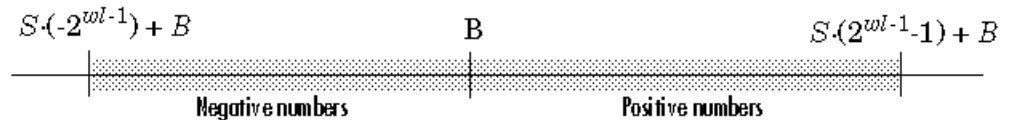
---

## Precision and Range

You must pay attention to the precision and range of the fixed-point data types and scalings you choose in order to know whether rounding methods will be invoked or if overflows or underflows will occur.

### Range

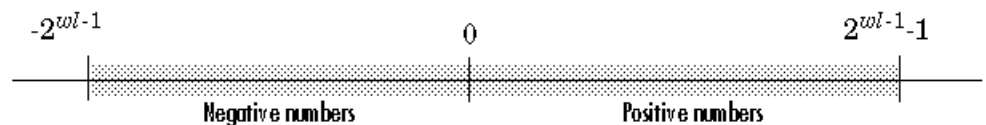
The range is the span of numbers that a fixed-point data type and scaling can represent. The range of representable numbers for a two's complement fixed-point number of word length  $wl$ , scaling  $S$ , and bias  $B$  is illustrated below:



For both signed and unsigned fixed-point numbers of any data type, the number of different bit patterns is  $2^{wl}$ .

For example, in two's complement, negative numbers must be represented as well as zero, so the maximum value is  $2^{wl-1} - 1$ . Because there is only one representation for zero, there are an unequal number of positive and negative numbers. This means there is a representation for  $-2^{wl-1}$  but not for  $2^{wl-1}$ :

For Slope = 1 and Bias = 0:



### Overflow Handling

Because a fixed-point data type represents numbers within a finite range, overflows and underflows can occur if the result of an operation is larger or smaller than the numbers in that range.

The Fixed-Point Toolbox allows you to either *saturate* or *wrap* overflows. Saturation represents positive overflows as the largest positive number

in the range being used, and negative overflows as the largest negative number in the range being used. Wrapping uses modulo arithmetic to cast an overflow back into the representable range of the data type. Refer to “Modulo Arithmetic” on page 2-9 for more information.

When you create a `fi` object in the Fixed-Point Toolbox, any overflows are saturated. The `OverflowMode` property of the default `fimath` object is `saturate`. You can log overflows and underflows by setting the `LoggingMode` property of the `fipref` object to `on`. Refer to “LoggingMode” on page 9-14 for more information.

### Precision

The precision of a fixed-point number is the difference between successive values representable by its data type and scaling, which is equal to the value of its least significant bit. The value of the least significant bit, and therefore the precision of the number, is determined by the number of fractional bits. A fixed-point value can be represented to within half of the precision of its data type and scaling.

For example, a fixed-point representation with four bits to the right of the binary point has a precision of  $2^{-4}$  or 0.0625, which is the value of its least significant bit. Any number within the range of this data type and scaling can be represented to within  $(2^{-4})/2$  or 0.03125, which is half the precision. This is an example of representing a number with finite precision.

### Rounding Methods

One of the limitations of representing numbers with finite precision is that not every number in the available range can be represented exactly. When the result of a fixed-point calculation is a number that cannot be represented exactly by the data type and scaling being used, precision is lost. A rounding method must be used to cast the result to a representable number. The Fixed-Point Toolbox currently supports the following rounding methods:

- `ceil` rounds to the closest representable number in the direction of positive infinity.
- `convergent` rounds to the closest representable integer. In the case of a tie, it rounds to the nearest even stored integer. This is the least biased rounding method provided by the Fixed-Point Toolbox.

- `fix` rounds to the closest representable integer in the direction of zero.
- `floor`, which is equivalent to two's complement truncation, rounds to the closest representable number in the direction of negative infinity.
- `nearest` rounds to the closest representable integer. In the case of a tie, it rounds to the closest representable integer in the direction of positive infinity. This is the default rounding method for `fi` object creation and `fi` arithmetic.
- `round` rounds to the closest representable integer. In the case of a tie, it rounds positive numbers to the closest representable integer in the direction of positive infinity, and it rounds negative numbers to the closest representable integer in the direction of negative infinity.

# Arithmetic Operations

The following sections describe the arithmetic operations used by the Fixed-Point Toolbox:

- “Modulo Arithmetic” on page 2-9
- “Two’s Complement” on page 2-9
- “Addition and Subtraction” on page 2-10
- “Multiplication” on page 2-11
- “Casts” on page 2-17

These sections will help you understand what data type and scaling choices result in overflows or a loss of precision.

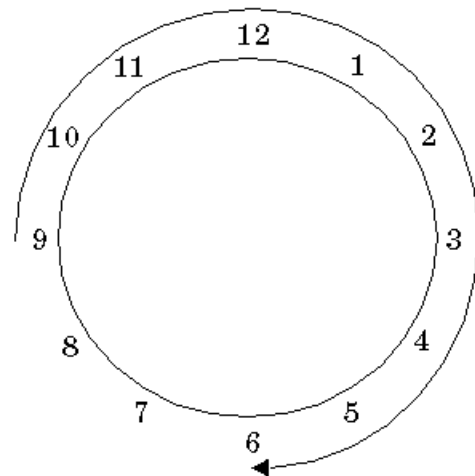
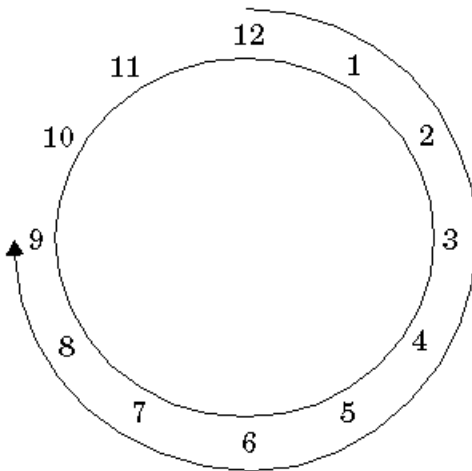
## Modulo Arithmetic

Binary math is based on modulo arithmetic. Modulo arithmetic uses only a finite set of numbers, wrapping the results of any calculations that fall outside the given set back into the set.

For example, the common everyday clock uses modulo 12 arithmetic. Numbers in this system can only be 1 through 12. Therefore, in the "clock" system, 9 plus 9 equals 6. This can be more easily visualized as a number circle:

9...

...plus 9 more...



...equals 6.

Similarly, binary math can only use the numbers 0 and 1, and any arithmetic results that fall outside this range are wrapped "around the circle" to either 0 or 1.

## Two's Complement

Two's complement is a way to interpret a binary number. In two's complement, positive numbers always start with a 0 and negative numbers always start

with a 1. If the leading bit of a two's complement number is 0, the value is obtained by calculating the standard binary value of the number. If the leading bit of a two's complement number is 1, the value is obtained by assuming that the leftmost bit is negative, and then calculating the binary value of the number. For example,

$$\begin{aligned}01 &= (0 + 2^0) = 1 \\11 &= ((-2^1) + (2^0)) = (-2 + 1) = -1\end{aligned}$$

To compute the negative of a binary number using two's complement,

- 1** Take the one's complement, or "flip the bits."
- 2** Add a 1 using binary math.
- 3** Discard any bits carried beyond the original word length.

For example, consider taking the negative of 11010 (-6). First, take the one's complement of the number, or flip the bits:

$$11010 \longrightarrow 00101$$

Next, add a 1, wrapping all numbers to 0 or 1:

$$\begin{array}{r}00101 \\+1 \\ \hline 00110 \text{ (6)}\end{array}$$

## Addition and Subtraction

The addition of fixed-point numbers requires that the binary points of the addends be aligned. The addition is then performed using binary arithmetic so that no number other than 0 or 1 is used.



For example, consider the addition of 010010.1 (18.5) with 0110.110 (6.75):

$$\begin{array}{r} 010010.1 \quad (18.5) \\ + 0110.110 \quad (6.75) \\ \hline 011001.010 \quad (25.25) \end{array}$$

Fixed-point subtraction is equivalent to adding while using the two's complement value for any negative values. In subtraction, the addends must be sign-extended to match each other's length. For example, consider subtracting 0110.110 (6.75) from 010010.1 (18.5):

$$\begin{array}{r} 010010.100 \quad (18.5) \\ - 0110.110 \quad (6.75) \\ \hline \end{array} \xrightarrow[\text{and sign extension}]{\text{two's complement}} \begin{array}{r} 010010.100 \quad (18.5) \\ + \mathbf{111001.010} \quad (-6.75) \\ \hline 1001011.110 \quad (11.75) \end{array}$$

Carry bit is discarded.

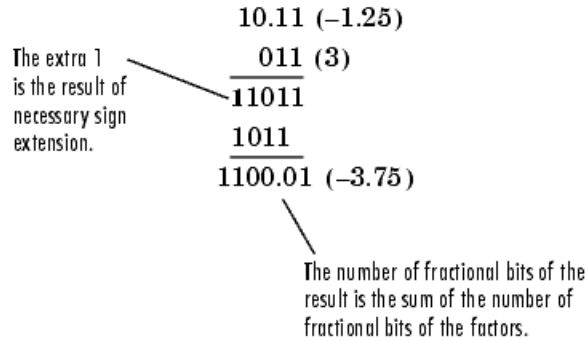
The default `fimath` object has a value of 1 (true) for the `CastBeforeSum` property. This casts addends to the sum data type before addition. Therefore, no further shifting is necessary during the addition to line up the binary points.

If `CastBeforeSum` has a value of 0 (false), the addends are added with full precision maintained. After the addition the sum is then quantized.

## Multiplication

The multiplication of two's complement fixed-point numbers is directly analogous to regular decimal multiplication, with the exception that the intermediate results must be sign-extended so that their left sides align before you add them together.

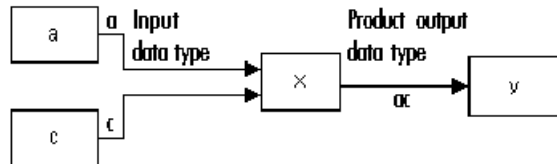
For example, consider the multiplication of 10.11 (-1.25) with 011 (3):



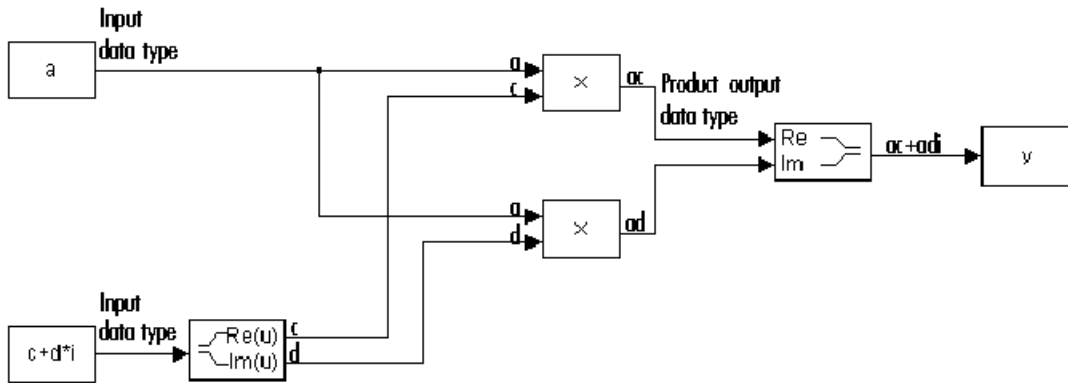
### Multiplication Data Types

The following diagrams show the data types used for fixed-point multiplication. The diagrams illustrate the differences between the data types used for real-real, complex-real, and complex-complex multiplication.

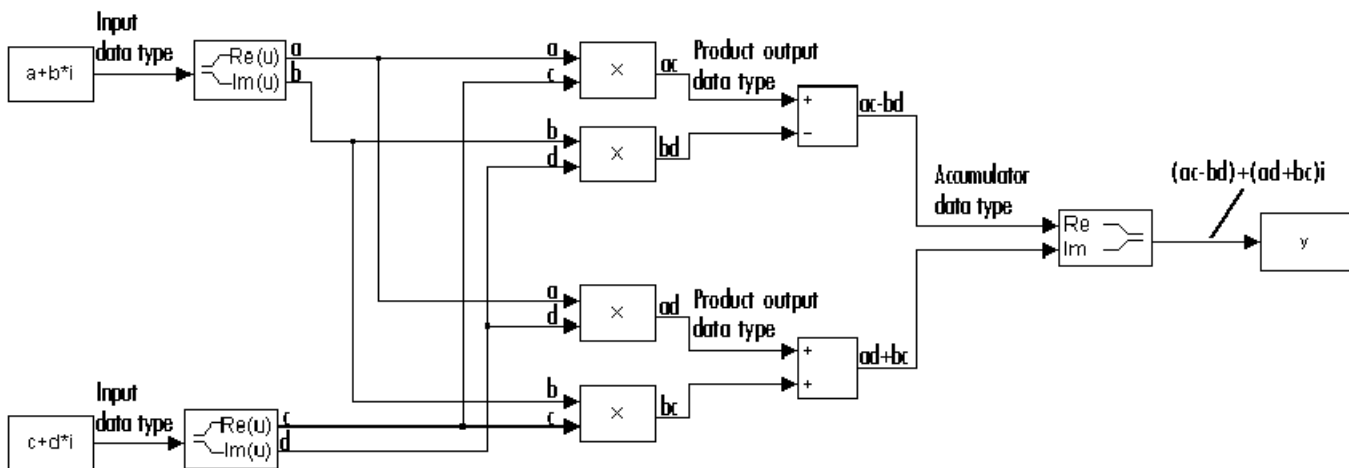
**Real-Real Multiplication.** The following diagram shows the data types used in the multiplication of two real numbers in the Fixed-Point Toolbox. The output of this multiplication is in the product data type, which is governed by the `fimath ProductMode` property:



**Real-Complex Multiplication.** The following diagram shows the data types used in the multiplication of a real and a complex fixed-point number in the Fixed-Point Toolbox. Real-complex and complex-real multiplication are equivalent. The output of this multiplication is in the product data type, which is governed by the `fimath ProductMode` property:



**Complex-Complex Multiplication.** The following diagram shows the multiplication of two complex fixed-point numbers in the Fixed-Point Toolbox. Note that the output of the multiplication is in the sum data type, which is governed by the `fimath SumMode` property. The product data type is determined by the `fimath ProductMode` property:



## Multiplication with fimath

In the following examples, let

- `F = fimath('ProductMode','FullPrecision',...  
'SumMode','FullPrecision')`
- `T1 = numerictype('WordLength',24,'FractionLength',20)`
- `T2 = numerictype('WordLength',16,'FractionLength',10)`

**Real\*Real.** Notice that the word length and fraction length of the result `z` are equal to the sum of the word lengths and fraction lengths, respectively, of the multiplicands. This is because the `fimath` `SumMode` and `ProductMode` properties are set to `FullPrecision`:

```
P = fipref;  
P.FimathDisplay = 'none';  
x = fi(5, T1, F)
```

```
x =
```

```
5
```

```
DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: binary point scaling  
Signed: true  
WordLength: 24  
FractionLength: 20
```

```
y = fi(10, T2, F)
```

```
y =
```

```
10
```

```
DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: binary point scaling  
Signed: true  
WordLength: 16  
FractionLength: 10
```

```
z = x*y
```

```
z =
```

```
50
```

```
DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: binary point scaling
Signed: true
WordLength: 40
FractionLength: 30
```

**Real\*Complex.** Notice that the word length and fraction length of the result  $z$  are equal to the sum of the word lengths and fraction lengths, respectively, of the multiplicands. This is because the `fimath SumMode` and `ProductMode` properties are set to `FullPrecision`:

```
x = fi(5,T1,F)
```

```
x =
```

```
5
```

```
DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: binary point scaling
Signed: true
WordLength: 24
FractionLength: 20
```

```
y = fi(10+2i,T2,F)
```

```
y =
```

```
10.0000 + 2.0000i
```

```
DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: binary point scaling  
Signed: true  
WordLength: 16  
FractionLength: 10
```

```
z = x*y
```

```
z =
```

```
50.0000 +10.0000i
```

```
DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: binary point scaling  
Signed: true  
WordLength: 40  
FractionLength: 30
```

**Complex\*Complex.** Complex-complex multiplication involves an addition as well as multiplication, so the word length of the full-precision result has one more bit than the sum of the word lengths of the multiplicands:

```
x = fi(5+6i,T1,F)
```

```
x =
```

```
5.0000 + 6.0000i
```

```
DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: binary point scaling  
Signed: true  
WordLength: 24  
FractionLength: 20
```

```
y = fi(10+2i,T2,F)
```

```
y =
```

```
10.0000 + 2.0000i
```

```
        DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: binary point scaling  
            Signed: true  
        WordLength: 16  
    FractionLength: 10
```

```
z = x*y
```

```
z =
```

```
38.0000 +70.0000i
```

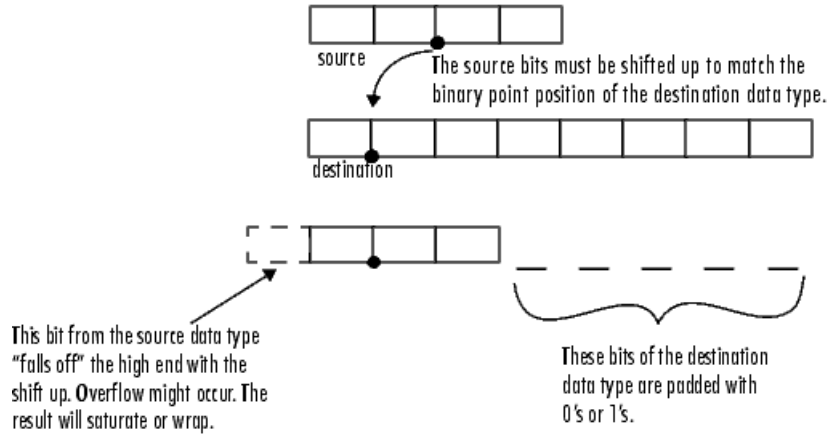
```
        DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: binary point scaling  
            Signed: true  
        WordLength: 41  
    FractionLength: 30
```

## Casts

The `fimath` object allows you to specify the data type and scaling of intermediate sums and products with the `SumMode` and `ProductMode` properties. It is important to keep in mind the ramifications of each cast when you set the `SumMode` and `ProductMode` properties. Depending upon the data types you select, overflow and/or rounding might occur. The following two examples demonstrate cases where overflow and rounding can occur.

### Casting from a Shorter Data Type to a Longer Data Type

Consider the cast of a nonzero number, represented by a 4-bit data type with two fractional bits, to an 8-bit data type with seven fractional bits:



As the diagram shows, the source bits are shifted up so that the binary point matches the destination binary point position. The highest source bit does not fit, so overflow might occur and the result can saturate or wrap. The empty bits at the low end of the destination data type are padded with either 0's or 1's:

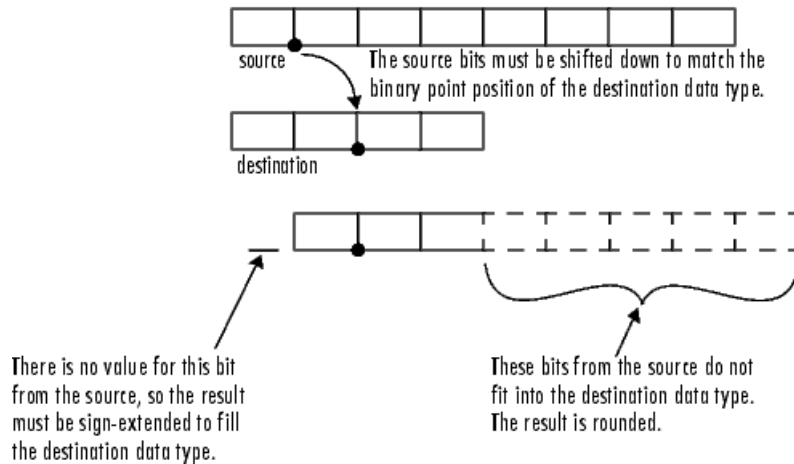
- If overflow does not occur, the empty bits are padded with 0's.
- If wrapping occurs, the empty bits are padded with 0's.
- If saturation occurs,
  - The empty bits of a positive number are padded with 1's.
  - The empty bits of a negative number are padded with 0's.

You can see that even with a cast from a shorter data type to a longer data type, overflow can still occur. This can happen when the integer length of the source data type (in this case two) is longer than the integer length of the destination data type (in this case one). Similarly, rounding might be necessary even when casting from a shorter data type to a longer data type, if the destination data type and scaling has fewer fractional bits than the source.



### Casting from a Longer Data Type to a Shorter Data Type

Consider the cast of a nonzero number, represented by an 8-bit data type with seven fractional bits, to a 4-bit data type with two fractional bits:



As the diagram shows, the source bits are shifted down so that the binary point matches the destination binary point position. There is no value for the highest bit from the source, so the result is sign-extended to fill the integer portion of the destination data type. The bottom five bits of the source do not fit into the fraction length of the destination. Therefore, precision can be lost as the result is rounded.

In this case, even though the cast is from a longer data type to a shorter data type, all the integer bits are maintained. Conversely, full precision can be maintained even if you cast to a shorter data type, as long as the fraction length of the destination data type is the same length or longer than the fraction length of the source data type. In that case, however, bits are lost from the high end of the result and overflow can occur.

The worst case occurs when both the integer length and the fraction length of the destination data type are shorter than those of the source data type and scaling. In that case, both overflow and a loss of precision can occur.

## fi Objects Compared to C Integer Data Types

The following sections compare the `fi` object with fixed-point data types and operations in C:

- “Integer Data Types” on page 2-20
- “Unary Conversions” on page 2-22
- “Binary Conversions” on page 2-23
- “Overflow Handling” on page 2-25

In these sections, the information on ANSI C is adapted from Samuel P. Harbison and Guy L. Steele Jr., *C: A reference manual*, 3rd ed., Prentice Hall, 1991.

### Integer Data Types

This section compares the numerical range of `fi` integer data types to the minimum numerical ranges of ANSI C integer data types.

#### ANSI C Integer Data Types

The following table shows the minimum ranges of ANSI C integer data types. The integer ranges can be larger than or equal to those shown, but cannot be smaller. The range of a `long` must be larger than or equal to the range of an `int`, which must be larger than or equal to the range of a `short`.

Note that the minimum ANSI C ranges are large enough to accommodate one’s complement or sign/magnitude representation, but not two’s complement representation. In the one’s complement and sign/magnitude representations, a signed integer with  $n$  bits has a range from  $-2^{n-1} + 1$  to  $2^{n-1} - 1$ , inclusive. In both of these representations, an equal number of positive and negative numbers are represented, and zero is represented twice.

Integer Type	Minimum	Maximum
signed char	-127	127
unsigned char	0	255

Integer Type	Minimum	Maximum
short int	-32,767	32,767
unsigned short	0	65,535
int	-32,767	32,767
unsigned int	0	65,535
long int	-2,147,483,647	2,147,483,647
unsigned long	0	4,294,967,295

### fi Integer Data Types

The following table lists the numerical ranges of the integer data types of the `fi` object, in particular those equivalent to the C integer data types. The ranges are large enough to accommodate the two's complement representation, which is the only signed binary encoding technique supported by the Fixed-Point Toolbox. In the two's complement representation, a signed integer with  $n$  bits has a range from  $-2^{n-1}$  to  $2^{n-1} - 1$ , inclusive. An unsigned integer with  $n$  bits has a range from 0 to  $2^n - 1$ , inclusive. The negative side of the range has one more value than the positive side, and zero is represented uniquely.

Constructor	Signed	Word Length	Fraction Length	Minimum	Maximum	Closest ANSI C Equivalent
<code>fi(x,1,n,0)</code>	Yes	$n$ (2 to 65,535)	0	$-2^{n-1}$	$2^{n-1} - 1$	N/A
<code>fi(x,0,n,0)</code>	No	$n$ (2 to 65,535)	0	0	$2^n - 1$	N/A
<code>fi(x,1,8,0)</code>	Yes	8	0	-128	127	signed char
<code>fi(x,0,8,0)</code>	No	8	0	0	255	unsigned char
<code>fi(x,1,16,0)</code>	Yes	16	0	-32,768	32,767	short int

Constructor	Signed	Word Length	Fraction Length	Minimum	Maximum	Closest ANSI C Equivalent
<code>fi(x,0,16,0)</code>	No	16	0	0	65,535	unsigned short
<code>fi(x,1,32,0)</code>	Yes	32	0	-2,147,483,648	2,147,483,647	long int
<code>fi(x,0,32,0)</code>	No	32	0	0	4,294,967,295	unsigned long

### Unary Conversions

Unary conversions dictate whether and how a single operand is converted before an operation is performed. This section discusses unary conversions in ANSI C and of `fi` objects.

### ANSI C Usual Unary Conversions

Unary conversions in ANSI C are automatically applied to the operands of the unary `!`, `-`, `~`, and `*` operators, and of the binary `<<` and `>>` operators, according to the following table:

Original Operand Type	ANSI C Conversion
char or short	int
unsigned char or unsigned short	int or unsigned int <sup>1</sup>
float	float
Array of T	Pointer to T
Function returning T	Pointer to function returning T

<sup>1</sup>If type `int` cannot represent all the values of the original data type without overflow, the converted type is `unsigned int`.

## fi Usual Unary Conversions

The following table shows the fi unary conversions:

C Operator	fi Equivalent	fi Conversion
!x	$\sim x = \text{not}(x)$	Result is logical.
~x	<code>bitcmp(x)</code>	Result is same numeric type as operand.
*x	No equivalent	N/A
$x \ll n$	<code>bitshift(x, n)</code> positive n	Result is same numeric type as operand. Overflow mode is obeyed: wrap or saturate if 1-valued bits are shifted off the left, or into the sign bit if the operand is signed. 0-valued bits are shifted in on the right.
$x \gg n$	<code>bitshift(x, -n)</code>	Result is same numeric type as operand. Round mode is obeyed if 1-valued bits are shifted off the right. 0-valued bits are shifted in on the left if the operand is either signed and positive or unsigned. 1-valued bits are shifted in on the left if the operand is signed and negative.
+x	+x	Result is same numeric type as operand.
-x	-x	Result is same numeric type as operand. Overflow mode is obeyed. For example, overflow might occur when you negate an unsigned fi or the most negative value of a signed fi.

## Binary Conversions

This section describes the conversions that occur when the operands of a binary operator are different data types.

### ANSI C Usual Binary Conversions

In ANSI C, operands of a binary operator must be of the same type. If they are different, one is converted to the type of the other according to the first applicable conversion in the following table:

Type of One Operand	Type of Other Operand	ANSI C Conversion
long double	Any	long double
double	Any	double
float	Any	float
unsigned long	Any	unsigned long
long	unsigned	long or unsigned long <sup>1</sup>
long	int	long
unsigned	int or unsigned	unsigned
int	int	int

<sup>1</sup>Type long is only used if it can represent all values of type unsigned.

### fi Usual Binary Conversions

When one of the operands of a binary operator (+, -, \*, .\*) is a `fi` object and the other is a MATLAB built-in numeric type, then the non-`fi` operand is converted to a `fi` object before the operation is performed, according to the following table:

Type of One Operand	Type of Other Operand	Properties of Other Operand After Conversion to a <code>fi</code> Object
<code>fi</code>	double or single	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Signed = same as the original <code>fi</code> operand</li> <li>• WordLength = same as the original <code>fi</code> operand</li> <li>• FractionLength = set to best precision possible</li> </ul>
<code>fi</code>	<code>int8</code>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Signed = 1</li> <li>• WordLength = 8</li> <li>• FractionLength = 0</li> </ul>

Type of One Operand	Type of Other Operand	Properties of Other Operand After Conversion to a fi Object
fi	uint8	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Signed = 0</li> <li>• WordLength = 8</li> <li>• FractionLength = 0</li> </ul>
fi	int16	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Signed = 1</li> <li>• WordLength = 16</li> <li>• FractionLength = 0</li> </ul>
fi	uint16	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Signed = 0</li> <li>• WordLength = 16</li> <li>• FractionLength = 0</li> </ul>
fi	int32	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Signed = 1</li> <li>• WordLength = 32</li> <li>• FractionLength = 0</li> </ul>
fi	uint32	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Signed = 0</li> <li>• WordLength = 32</li> <li>• FractionLength = 0</li> </ul>

## Overflow Handling

The following sections compare how overflows are handled in ANSI C and the Fixed-Point Toolbox.

### **ANSI C Overflow Handling**

In ANSI C, the result of signed integer operations is whatever value is produced by the machine instruction used to implement the operation. Therefore, ANSI C has no rules for handling signed integer overflow.

The results of unsigned integer overflows wrap in ANSI C.

### **fi Overflow Handling**

Addition and multiplication with `fi` objects yield results that can be exactly represented by a `fi` object, up to word lengths of 65,535 bits or the available memory on your machine. This is not true of division, however, because many ratios result in infinite binary expressions. You can perform division with `fi` objects using the `divide` function, which requires you to explicitly specify the numeric type of the result.

The conditions under which a `fi` object overflows and the results then produced are determined by the associated `fimath` object. You can specify certain overflow characteristics separately for sums (including differences) and products. Refer to the following table:

<b>fimath Object Properties Related to Overflow Handling</b>	<b>Property Value</b>	<b>Description</b>
OverflowMode	'saturate'	Overflows are saturated to the maximum or minimum value in the range.
	'wrap'	Overflows wrap using modulo arithmetic if unsigned, two's complement wrap if signed.
ProductMode	'FullPrecision'	Full-precision results are kept. Overflow does not occur. An error is thrown if the resulting word length is greater than <code>MaxProductWordLength</code> .  The rules for computing the resulting product word and fraction lengths are given in "ProductMode" on page 9-7.



<b>fimath Object Properties Related to Overflow Handling</b>	<b>Property Value</b>	<b>Description</b>
	'KeepLSB'	<p>The least significant bits of the product are kept. Full precision is kept, but overflow is possible. This behavior models the C language integer operations.</p> <p>The resulting word length is determined by the ProductWordLength property. If ProductWordLength is greater than is necessary for the full-precision product, then the result is stored in the least significant bits. If ProductWordLength is less than is necessary for the full-precision product, then overflow occurs.</p> <p>The rule for computing the resulting product fraction length is given in “ProductMode” on page 9-7.</p>
	'KeepMSB'	<p>The most significant bits of the product are kept. Overflow is prevented, but precision may be lost.</p> <p>The resulting word length is determined by the ProductWordLength property. If ProductWordLength is greater than is necessary for the full-precision product, then the result is stored in the most significant bits. If ProductWordLength is less than is necessary for the full-precision product, then rounding occurs.</p> <p>The rule for computing the resulting product fraction length is given in “ProductMode” on page 9-7.</p>
	'SpecifyPrecision'	<p>You can specify both the word length and the fraction length of the resulting product.</p>

<b>fimath Object Properties Related to Overflow Handling</b>	<b>Property Value</b>	<b>Description</b>
ProductWordLength	Positive integer	The word length of product results when ProductMode is 'KeepLSB', 'KeepMSB', or 'SpecifyPrecision'.
MaxProductWordLength	Positive integer	The maximum product word length allowed when ProductMode is 'FullPrecision'. The default is 128 bits. The maximum is 65,535 bits. This property can help ensure that your simulation does not exceed your hardware requirements.
ProductFractionLength	Integer	The fraction length of product results when ProductMode is 'Specify Precision'.
SumMode	'FullPrecision'	<p>Full-precision results are kept. Overflow does not occur. An error is thrown if the resulting word length is greater than MaxSumWordLength.</p> <p>The rules for computing the resulting sum word and fraction lengths are given in “SumMode” on page 9-11.</p>

<b>fimath Object Properties Related to Overflow Handling</b>	<b>Property Value</b>	<b>Description</b>
	'KeepLSB'	<p>The least significant bits of the sum are kept. Full precision is kept, but overflow is possible. This behavior models the C language integer operations.</p> <p>The resulting word length is determined by the SumWordLength property. If SumWordLength is greater than is necessary for the full-precision sum, then the result is stored in the least significant bits. If SumWordLength is less than is necessary for the full-precision sum, then overflow occurs.</p> <p>The rule for computing the resulting sum fraction length is given in “SumMode” on page 9-11.</p>
	'KeepMSB'	<p>The most significant bits of the sum are kept. Overflow is prevented, but precision may be lost.</p> <p>The resulting word length is determined by the SumWordLength property. If SumWordLength is greater than is necessary for the full-precision sum, then the result is stored in the most significant bits. If SumWordLength is less than is necessary for the full-precision sum, then rounding occurs.</p> <p>The rule for computing the resulting sum fraction length is given in “SumMode” on page 9-11.</p>
	'SpecifyPrecision'	<p>You can specify both the word length and the fraction length of the resulting sum.</p>

<b>fimath Object Properties Related to Overflow Handling</b>	<b>Property Value</b>	<b>Description</b>
SumWordLength	Positive integer	The word length of sum results when SumMode is 'KeepLSB', 'KeepMSB', or 'SpecifyPrecision'.
MaxSumWordLength	Positive integer	The maximum sum word length allowed when SumMode is 'FullPrecision'. The default is 128 bits. The maximum is 65,535 bits. This property can help ensure that your simulation does not exceed your hardware requirements.
SumFractionLength	Integer	The fraction length of sum results when SumMode is 'SpecifyPrecision'.

# Working with `fi` Objects

---

Constructing `fi` Objects (p. 3-2)

Teaches you how to create `fi` objects

`fi` Object Properties (p. 3-10)

Tells you how to find more information about the properties associated with `fi` objects, and shows you how to set these properties

`fi` Object Functions (p. 3-15)

Introduces the functions in the toolbox that operate directly on `fi` objects

## Constructing `fi` Objects

You can create `fi` objects in the Fixed-Point Toolbox in one of two ways:

- You can use the `fi` constructor function to create a new object.
- You can use the `fi` constructor function to copy an existing `fi` object.

To get started, type

```
a = fi(0)
```

to create a `fi` object with the default data type and a value of 0.

```
a =
```

```
0
```

```
      DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: binary point scaling  
             Signed: true  
           WordLength: 16  
       FractionLength: 15
```

A signed `fi` object is created with a value of 0, word length of 16 bits, and fraction length of 15 bits.

---

**Note** For information on the display format of `fi` objects, refer to “Display Settings” on page 1-6.

---

You can use the `fi` constructor function in the following ways:

- `fi(v)` returns a signed fixed-point object with value `v`, 16-bit word length, and best-precision fraction length.
- `fi(v,s)` returns a fixed-point object with value `v`, signedness `s`, 16-bit word length, and best-precision fraction length. `s` can be 0 (false) for unsigned or 1 (true) for signed.

- `fi(v,s,w)` returns a fixed-point object with value `v`, signedness `s`, word length `w`, and best-precision fraction length.
- `fi(v,s,w,f)` returns a fixed-point object with value `v`, signedness `s`, word length `w`, and fraction length `f`.
- `fi(v,s,w,slope,bias)` returns a fixed-point object with value `v`, signedness `s`, word length `w`, slope, and bias.
- `fi(v,s,w,slopeadjustmentfactor,fixedexponent,bias)` returns a fixed-point object with value `v`, signedness `s`, word length `w`, slope adjustment `slopeadjustmentfactor`, exponent `fixedexponent`, and bias `bias`.
- `fi(v,T)` returns a fixed-point object with value `v` and `embedded.numericType` `T`. Refer to Chapter 6, “Working with numericType Objects” for more information on numericType objects.
- `fi(a,F)` allows you to maintain the value and numericType object of `fi` object `a`, while changing its `fiMath` object to `F`. Refer to Chapter 4, “Working with fiMath Objects” for more information on fiMath objects.
- `fi(v,T,F)` returns a fixed-point object with value `v`, `embedded.numericType` `T`, and `embedded.fiMath` `F`.
- `fi(...'PropertyName',PropertyValue...)` and `fi('PropertyName',PropertyValue...)` allow you to set properties for a `fi` object using property name/property value pairs.

## Examples of Constructing fi Objects

For example, the following creates a `fi` object with a value of `pi`, a word length of 8 bits, and a fraction length of 3 bits.

```
a = fi(pi, 1, 8, 3)
```

```
a =
```

```
3.1250
```

```
DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: binary point scaling
Signed: true
WordLength: 8
```

FractionLength: 3

The value *v* can also be an array.

```
a = fi((magic(3)/10), 1, 16, 12)
```

```
a =
```

```
0.8000    0.1001    0.6001
0.3000    0.5000    0.7000
0.3999    0.8999    0.2000
```

```
DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: binary point scaling
Signed: true
WordLength: 16
FractionLength: 12
```

If you omit the argument *f*, it is set automatically to the best precision possible.

```
a = fi(pi, 1, 8)
```

```
a =
```

```
3.1563
```

```
DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: binary point scaling
Signed: true
WordLength: 8
FractionLength: 5
```

If you omit *w* and *f*, they are set automatically to 16 bits and the best precision possible, respectively.

```
a = fi(pi, 1)
```

```
a =
```



```
3.1416
```

```

        DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: binary point scaling
            Signed: true
            WordLength: 16
        FractionLength: 13

```

### Constructing a fi Object with Property Name/Property Value Pairs

You can use property name/property value pairs to set fi properties when you create the object:

```
a = fi(pi, 'roundmode', 'floor', 'overflowmode', 'wrap')
```

```
a =
```

```
3.1415
```

```

        DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: binary point scaling
            Signed: true
            WordLength: 16
        FractionLength: 13

        RoundMode: floor
        OverflowMode: wrap
        ProductMode: FullPrecision
    MaxProductWordLength: 128
        SumMode: FullPrecision
    MaxSumWordLength: 128
        CastBeforeSum: true

```

### Constructing a fi Object Using a numerictype Object

You can use a numerictype object to define a fi object:

```
T = numerictype
```

```
T =
```

```
        DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: binary point scaling
          Signed: true
          WordLength: 16
        FractionLength: 15
```

```
a = fi(pi, T)
```

```
a =
```

```
    1.0000
```

```
        DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: binary point scaling
          Signed: true
          WordLength: 16
        FractionLength: 15
```

```
        RoundMode: nearest
        OverflowMode: saturate
        ProductMode: FullPrecision
    MaxProductWordLength: 128
        SumMode: FullPrecision
    MaxSumWordLength: 128
        CastBeforeSum: true
```

You can also use a `fimath` object with a numeric type object to define a `fi` object:

```
F = fimath
```

```
F =
```

```
        RoundMode: nearest
        OverflowMode: saturate
        ProductMode: FullPrecision
    MaxProductWordLength: 128
        SumMode: FullPrecision
```

```

MaxSumWordLength: 128
CastBeforeSum: true

a = fi(pi, T, F)

a =

1.0000

DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: binary point scaling
Signed: true
WordLength: 16
FractionLength: 15

RoundMode: nearest
OverflowMode: saturate
ProductMode: FullPrecision
MaxProductWordLength: 128
SumMode: FullPrecision
MaxSumWordLength: 128
CastBeforeSum: true

```

### Determining Property Precedence

Note that the value of a property is taken from the last time it is set. For example, create a numeric type object with a value of true for the 'signed' property:

```

T = numericType('signed', true)

T =

DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: binary point scaling
Signed: true
WordLength: 16
FractionLength: 15

```

Now create the following fi object in which the `numericity` property is specified *after* the `signed` property, so that the resulting fi object is signed:

```
a = fi(pi,'signed',false,'numericity',T)

a =

    1.0000

        DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: binary point scaling
           Signed: true
        WordLength: 16
    FractionLength: 15

        RoundMode: nearest
    OverflowMode: saturate
        ProductMode: FullPrecision
MaxProductWordLength: 128
        SumMode: FullPrecision
    MaxSumWordLength: 128
    CastBeforeSum: true
```

Contrast this with the following fi object in which the `numericity` property is specified *before* the `signed` property, so the resulting fi object is unsigned:

```
b = fi(pi,'numericity',T,'signed',false)

b =

    3.1416

        DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: binary point scaling
           Signed: false
        WordLength: 16
    FractionLength: 14

        RoundMode: nearest
    OverflowMode: saturate
        ProductMode: FullPrecision
MaxProductWordLength: 128
```

```
SumMode: FullPrecision
MaxSumWordLength: 128
CastBeforeSum: true
```

### Copying a fi Object

To copy a fi object, simply use assignment as in the following example:

```
a = fi(pi)
```

```
a =
```

```
3.1416
```

```
DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: binary point scaling
Signed: true
WordLength: 16
FractionLength: 13
```

```
b = a
```

```
b =
```

```
3.1416
```

```
DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: binary point scaling
Signed: true
WordLength: 16
FractionLength: 13
```

## **fi Object Properties**

The `fi` object has the following three types of properties:

- “Data Properties” on page 3-10
- “`fimath` Properties” on page 3-10
- “`numerictype` Properties” on page 3-11

### **Data Properties**

The data properties of a `fi` object are always writable:

- `bin` — Stored integer value of a `fi` object in binary
- `data` — Numerical real-world value of a `fi` object
- `dec` — Stored integer value of a `fi` object in decimal
- `double` — Real-world value of a `fi` object, stored as a MATLAB double
- `hex` — Stored integer value of a `fi` object in hexadecimal
- `int` — Stored integer value of a `fi` object, stored in a built-in MATLAB integer data type. You can also use `int8`, `int16`, `int32`, `uint8`, `uint16`, and `uint32` to get the stored integer value of a `fi` object in these formats
- `oct` — Stored integer value of a `fi` object in octal

### **fimath Properties**

When you create a `fi` object, a `fimath` object is also automatically created as a property of the `fi` object:

- `fimath` — `fimath` object associated with a `fi` object

The following `fimath` properties are, by transitivity, also properties of a `fi` object. The properties of the `fimath` object listed below are always writable:

- `CastBeforeSum` — Whether both operands are cast to the sum data type before addition
- `MaxProductWordLength` — Maximum allowable word length for the product data type

- `MaxSumWordLength` — Maximum allowable word length for the sum data type
- `OverflowMode` — Overflow mode
- `ProductBias` — Bias of the product data type
- `ProductFixedExponent` — Fixed exponent of the product data type
- `ProductFractionLength` — Fraction length, in bits, of the product data type
- `ProductMode` — Defines how the product data type is determined
- `ProductSlope` — Slope of the product data type
- `ProductSlopeAdjustmentFactor` — Slope adjustment factor of the product data type
- `ProductWordLength` — Word length, in bits, of the product data type
- `RoundMode` — Rounding mode
- `SumBias` — Bias of the sum data type
- `SumFixedExponent` — Fixed exponent of the sum data type
- `SumFractionLength` — Fraction length, in bits, of the sum data type
- `SumMode` — Defines how the sum data type is determined
- `SumSlope` — Slope of the sum data type
- `SumSlopeAdjustmentFactor` — Slope adjustment factor of the sum data type
- `SumWordLength` — The word length, in bits, of the sum data type

## **numerictype Properties**

When you create a `fi` object, a `numerictype` object is also automatically created as a property of the `fi` object:

- `numerictype` — Object containing all the numeric type attributes of a `fi` object

The following `numerictype` properties are, by transitivity, also properties of a `fi` object. The properties of the `numerictype` object listed below are not

writable once the `fi` object has been created. However, you can create a copy of a `fi` object with new values specified for the numeric type properties:

- `Bias` — Bias of a `fi` object
- `DataType` — Data type category associated with a `fi` object
- `DataTypeMode` — Data type and scaling mode of a `fi` object
- `FixedExponent` — Fixed-point exponent associated with a `fi` object
- `FractionLength` — Fraction length of the stored integer value of a `fi` object in bits
- `Scaling` — Fixed-point scaling mode of a `fi` object
- `Signed` — Whether a `fi` object is signed or unsigned
- `Slope` — Slope associated with a `fi` object
- `SlopeAdjustmentFactor` — Slope adjustment associated with a `fi` object
- `WordLength` — Word length of the stored integer value of a `fi` object in bits

These properties are described in detail in Chapter 9, “Property Reference”. There are two ways to specify properties for `fi` objects in the Fixed-Point Toolbox. Refer to the following sections:

- “Setting Fixed-Point Properties at Object Creation” on page 3-12
- “Using Direct Property Referencing with `fi`” on page 3-13

### Setting Fixed-Point Properties at Object Creation

You can set properties of `fi` objects at the time of object creation by including properties after the arguments of the `fi` constructor function. For example, to set the overflow mode to wrap and the rounding mode to convergent,

```
a = fi(pi, 'OverflowMode', 'wrap', 'RoundMode', 'convergent')
```

```
a =
```

```
3.1416
```

```
DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: binary point scaling
```



```

Signed: true
WordLength: 16
FractionLength: 13

```

```

RoundMode: convergent
OverflowMode: wrap
ProductMode: FullPrecision
MaxProductWordLength: 128
SumMode: FullPrecision
MaxSumWordLength: 128
CastBeforeSum: true

```

## Using Direct Property Referencing with fi

You can reference directly into a property for setting or retrieving `fi` object property values using MATLAB structure-like referencing. You do this by using a period to index into a property by name.

For example, to get the `DataTypeMode` of `a`,

```

a.DataTypeMode

ans =

Fixed-point: binary point scaling

```

To set the `OverflowMode` of `a`,

```

a.OverflowMode = 'wrap'

a =

3.1416

```

```

DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: binary point scaling
Signed: true
WordLength: 16
FractionLength: 13

RoundMode: convergent

```

```
OverflowMode: wrap
ProductMode: FullPrecision
MaxProductWordLength: 128
SumMode: FullPrecision
MaxSumWordLength: 128
CastBeforeSum: true
```

## fi Object Functions

The functions in the following table operate directly on `fi` objects.

abs	all	and	any	area
bar	barh	bin	bitand	bitcmp
bitget	bitor	bitshift	bitxor	buffer
clabel	comet	comet3	compass	complex
coneplot	conj	contour	contour3	contourc
contourf	ctranspose	dec	diag	double
end	eps	eq	errorbar	etreeplot
ezcontour	ezcontourf	ezmesh	ezplot	ezplot3
ezpolar	ezsurf	ezsurfc	feather	fi
fimath	fplot	ge	get	gplot
gt	hankel	hex	hist	histc
horzcat	imag	innerprodintbits	inspect	int
int8	int16	int32	intmax	intmin
ipermute	iscolumn	isempty	isequal	isfi
isfinite	isinf	isnan	isnumeric	isobject
ispropequal	isreal	isrow	isscalar	assigned
isvector	le	length	line	logical
lowerbound	lsb	lt	max	mesh
meshc	meshz	min	minus	mtimes
ndims	ne	not	numberofelements	numerictype
oct	or	patch	pcolor	permute
plot	plot3	plotmatrix	plotyy	plus
polar	pow2	quantizer	quiver	quiver3
range	real	realmax	realmin	repmat
rescale	reshape	rgbplot	ribbon	rose

scatter	scatter3	sdec	sign	single
size	slice	spy	stairs	stem
stem3	streamribbon	streamslice	streamtube	stripscaling
subsasgn	subsref	sum	surf	surfc
surf1	surfnorm	text	times	toeplitz
transpose	treemap	tril	trimesh	triplot
trisurf	triu	uint8	uint16	uint32
uminus	uplus	upperbound	vertcat	voronoi
voronoin	waterfall	xlim	ylim	zlim

You can learn about the functions associated with `fi` objects in the [Function Reference](#).

The following data-access functions can be also used to get the data in a `fi` object using dot notation.

- `bin`
- `data`
- `dec`
- `double`
- `hex`
- `int`
- `oct`

For example,

```
a = fi(pi);  
n = int(a)  
  
n =  
  
25736
```

```
a.int
```

```
ans =
```

```
25736
```

```
h = hex(a)
```

```
h =
```

```
6488
```

```
a.hex
```

```
ans =
```

```
6488
```



# Working with fimath Objects

---

Constructing fimath Objects (p. 4-2)	Teaches you how to create fimath objects
fimath Object Properties (p. 4-4)	Tells you how to find more information about the properties associated with fimath objects, and shows you how to set these properties
Using fimath Objects to Perform Fixed-Point Arithmetic (p. 4-9)	Gives examples of using fimath objects to control the results of fixed-point arithmetic with fi objects
Using fimath to Share Arithmetic Rules (p. 4-16)	Gives an example of using a fimath object to share modular arithmetic information among multiple fi objects
Using fimath ProductMode and SumMode (p. 4-18)	Shows the differences among the different settings of the ProductMode and SumMode properties
fimath Object Functions (p. 4-23)	Introduces the functions in the toolbox that operate directly on fimath objects

## Constructing `fimath` Objects

`fimath` objects define the arithmetic attributes of `fi` objects. You can create `fimath` objects in the Fixed-Point Toolbox in one of two ways:

- You can use the `fimath` constructor function to create a new object.
- You can use the `fimath` constructor function to copy an existing `fimath` object.

To get started, type

```
F = fimath
```

to create a default `fimath` object.

```
F = fimath
```

```
F =
```

```
          RoundMode: nearest  
          OverflowMode: saturate  
          ProductMode: FullPrecision  
MaxProductWordLength: 128  
          SumMode: FullPrecision  
MaxSumWordLength: 128  
          CastBeforeSum: true
```

To copy a `fimath` object, simply use assignment as in the following example:

```
F = fimath;  
G = F;  
isequal(F,G)
```

```
ans =
```

```
1
```



The syntax

```
F = fimath(... 'PropertyName',PropertyValue...)
```

allows you to set properties for a fimath object at object creation with property name/property value pairs. Refer to “Setting fimath Properties at Object Creation” on page 4-5.

## **fimath Object Properties**

The following properties of `fimath` objects are always writable:

- `CastBeforeSum` — Whether both operands are cast to the sum data type before addition
- `MaxProductWordLength` — Maximum allowable word length for the product data type
- `MaxSumWordLength` — Maximum allowable word length for the sum data type
- `OverflowMode` — Overflow-handling mode
- `ProductBias` — Bias of the product data type
- `ProductFixedExponent` — Fixed exponent of the product data type
- `ProductFractionLength` — Fraction length, in bits, of the product data type
- `ProductMode` — Defines how the product data type is determined
- `ProductSlope` — Slope of the product data type
- `ProductSlopeAdjustmentFactor` — Slope adjustment factor of the product data type
- `ProductWordLength` — Word length, in bits, of the product data type
- `RoundMode` — Rounding mode
- `SumBias` — Bias of the sum data type
- `SumFixedExponent` — Fixed exponent of the sum data type
- `SumFractionLength` — Fraction length, in bits, of the sum data type
- `SumMode` — Defines how the sum data type is determined
- `SumSlope` — Slope of the sum data type
- `SumSlopeAdjustmentFactor` — Slope adjustment factor of the sum data type
- `SumWordLength` — Word length, in bits, of the sum data type

These properties are described in detail in Chapter 9, “Property Reference”. There are three ways to specify properties for `fimath` objects in the Fixed-Point Toolbox. Refer to the following sections:

- “Setting `fimath` Properties at Object Creation” on page 4-5
- “Using Direct Property Referencing with `fimath`” on page 4-6
- “Setting `fimath` Properties in the Model Explorer” on page 4-7

### **Setting `fimath` Properties at Object Creation**

You can set properties of `fimath` objects at the time of object creation by including properties after the arguments of the `fimath` constructor function.

For example, to set the overflow mode to saturate and the rounding mode to convergent,

```
F = fimath('OverflowMode','saturate','RoundMode','convergent')
```

```
F =
```

```
          RoundMode: convergent
    OverflowMode: saturate
    ProductMode: FullPrecision
MaxProductWordLength: 128
          SumMode: FullPrecision
    MaxSumWordLength: 128
    CastBeforeSum: true
```

### Using Direct Property Referencing with fimath

You can reference directly into a property for setting or retrieving fimath object property values using MATLAB structure-like referencing. You do this by using a period to index into a property by name.

For example, to get the RoundMode of F,

```
F.RoundMode
```

```
ans =
```

```
convergent
```

To set the OverflowMode of F,

```
F.OverflowMode = 'wrap'
```

```
F =
```

```
          RoundMode: convergent
    OverflowMode: wrap
    ProductMode: FullPrecision
MaxProductWordLength: 128
```

```
SumMode: FullPrecision
MaxSumWordLength: 128
CastBeforeSum: true
```

## Setting fimath Properties in the Model Explorer

You can view and change the properties for any `fimath` object defined in the MATLAB workspace in the Model Explorer. Open the Model Explorer by selecting **View > Model Explorer** in any Simulink model, or by typing `daexplr` at the MATLAB command line.

The figure below shows the Model Explorer when you define the following `fimath` objects in the MATLAB workspace:

```
F = fimath
```

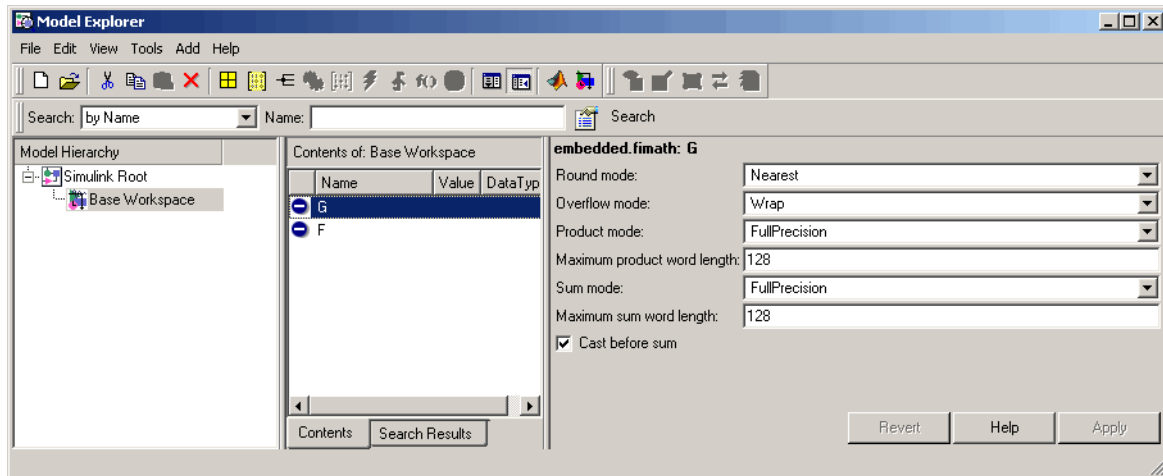
```
F =
```

```
RoundMode: nearest
OverflowMode: saturate
ProductMode: FullPrecision
MaxProductWordLength: 128
SumMode: FullPrecision
MaxSumWordLength: 128
CastBeforeSum: true
```

```
G = fimath('OverflowMode','wrap')
```

```
G =
```

```
RoundMode: nearest
OverflowMode: wrap
ProductMode: FullPrecision
MaxProductWordLength: 128
SumMode: FullPrecision
MaxSumWordLength: 128
CastBeforeSum: true
```



Select the **Base Workspace** node in the **Model Hierarchy** pane to view the current objects in the **Contents** pane. When you select a fimath object in the **Contents** pane, you can view and change its properties in the **Dialog** pane.

## Using fimath Objects to Perform Fixed-Point Arithmetic

The `fimath` object encapsulates the math properties of the Fixed-Point Toolbox, and is itself a property of the `fi` object.

Every `fi` object has a `fimath` object as a property.

```
a = fi(pi)
```

```
a =
```

```
3.1416
```

```
      DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: binary point scaling  
          Signed: true  
      WordLength: 16  
FractionLength: 13
```

```
      RoundMode: nearest  
      OverflowMode: saturate  
      ProductMode: FullPrecision  
MaxProductWordLength: 128  
      SumMode: FullPrecision  
MaxSumWordLength: 128  
      CastBeforeSum: true
```

```
a.fimath
```

```
ans =
```

```
      RoundMode: nearest  
      OverflowMode: saturate  
      ProductMode: FullPrecision  
MaxProductWordLength: 128  
      SumMode: FullPrecision  
MaxSumWordLength: 128  
      CastBeforeSum: true
```

To perform arithmetic with +, -, .\*, or \*, two `fi` operands must have the same `fimath` properties.

```
a = fi(pi);  
b = fi(8);  
isequal(a.fimath, b.fimath)
```

```
ans =
```

```
1
```

```
a + b
```

```
ans =
```

```
11.1416
```

```
DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: binary point scaling  
Signed: true  
WordLength: 19  
FractionLength: 13
```

```
RoundMode: nearest  
OverflowMode: saturate  
ProductMode: FullPrecision  
MaxProductWordLength: 128  
SumMode: FullPrecision  
MaxSumWordLength: 128  
CastBeforeSum: true
```

To perform arithmetic with +, -, .\*, or \*, two `fi` operands must also have the same data type. For example, you can perform addition on two `fi` objects with data type `double`, but not on an object with data type `double` and one with data type `single`:

```
a = fi(3, 'DataType', 'double')
```

```
a =
```



```
3
    DataTypeMode: double
b = fi(27, 'DataType', 'double')
b =
    27
    DataTypeMode: double
a + b
ans =
    30
    DataTypeMode: double
c = fi(12, 'DataType', 'single')
c =
    12
    DataTypeMode: single
a + c
??? Math operations are not allowed on FI objects with
different data types.
```

Fixed-point `fi` object operands do not have to have the same scaling. Math is permitted between fixed-point and scaled doubles `fi` objects. In this sense, the scaled double data type acts as a fixed-point data type:

```
a = fi(pi)
a =
```

3.1416

```
    DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: binary point scaling
      Signed: true
      WordLength: 16
    FractionLength: 13
```

```
      RoundMode: nearest
      OverflowMode: saturate
      ProductMode: FullPrecision
    MaxProductWordLength: 128
      SumMode: FullPrecision
    MaxSumWordLength: 128
    CastBeforeSum: true
```

```
b = fi(magic(2), 'DataTypeMode', 'Scaled double: binary point scaling')
```

```
b =
```

```
    1    3
    4    2
```

```
    DataTypeMode: Scaled double: binary point scaling
      Signed: true
      WordLength: 16
    FractionLength: 12
```

```
      RoundMode: nearest
      OverflowMode: saturate
      ProductMode: FullPrecision
    MaxProductWordLength: 128
      SumMode: FullPrecision
    MaxSumWordLength: 128
    CastBeforeSum: true
```

```
a + b
```

```
ans =
```

```

4.1416    6.1416
7.1416    5.1416

```

```

        DataTypeMode: Scaled double: binary point scaling
            Signed: true
            WordLength: 18
        FractionLength: 13

```

```

            RoundMode: nearest
            OverflowMode: saturate
            ProductMode: FullPrecision
        MaxProductWordLength: 128
            SumMode: FullPrecision
        MaxSumWordLength: 128
        CastBeforeSum: true

```

Use the `divide` function to perform division with doubles, singles, or binary point-only scaling `fi` objects.

## [Slope Bias] Arithmetic

Fixed-point arithmetic using the `fimath` object is supported for all binary point-only signals. Arithmetic is also supported for [Slope Bias] signals with the following restrictions:

- [Slope Bias] signals must be real.
- The `fimath` object `SumMode` and `ProductMode` properties must be set to `'SpecifyPrecision'` for sum and multiply operations, respectively.
- The `fimath` object `CastBeforeSum` property must be set to `'true'`.
- The `divide` function is not supported for [Slope Bias] signals.

```
f = fimath('SumMode', 'SpecifyPrecision', 'SumFractionLength', 16)
```

```
f =
```

```

        RoundMode: nearest
        OverflowMode: saturate

```

```

        ProductMode: FullPrecision
    MaxProductWordLength: 128
        SumMode: SpecifyPrecision
    SumWordLength: 32
    SumFractionLength: 16
    CastBeforeSum: true

a = fi(pi, 'fimath', f)

a =

    3.1416

        DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: binary point scaling
        Signed: true
        WordLength: 16
    FractionLength: 13

        RoundMode: nearest
    OverflowMode: saturate
        ProductMode: FullPrecision
    MaxProductWordLength: 128
        SumMode: SpecifyPrecision
    SumWordLength: 32
    SumFractionLength: 16
    CastBeforeSum: true

b = fi(22, true, 16, 2^-8, 3, 'fimath', f)

b =

    22

        DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: slope and bias scaling
        Signed: true
        WordLength: 16
        Slope: 0.00390625
        Bias: 3

        RoundMode: nearest
```

```
OverflowMode: saturate
ProductMode: FullPrecision
MaxProductWordLength: 128
SumMode: SpecifyPrecision
SumWordLength: 32
SumFractionLength: 16
CastBeforeSum: true
```

a + b

ans =

25.1416

```
DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: binary point scaling
Signed: true
WordLength: 32
FractionLength: 16
```

```
RoundMode: nearest
OverflowMode: saturate
ProductMode: FullPrecision
MaxProductWordLength: 128
SumMode: SpecifyPrecision
SumWordLength: 32
SumFractionLength: 16
CastBeforeSum: true
```

Setting the SumMode and ProductMode properties to SpecifyPrecision are mutually exclusive except when performing the \* operation between matrices. In this case, both the SumMode and ProductMode properties must be set to SpecifyPrecision for [Slope Bias] signals, because both sum and multiply operations are performed while calculating the result.

## Using fimath to Share Arithmetic Rules

You can use a `fimath` object to define common arithmetic rules that you would like to use for many `fi` objects. You can then create multiple `fi` objects, using the same `fimath` object for each. To do so, you also need to create a `numericity` object to define a common data type and scaling. Refer to Chapter 6, “Working with `numericity` Objects” for more information on `numericity` objects. The following example shows the creation of a `numericity` object and `fimath` object, which are then used to create two `fi` objects with the same `numericity` and `fimath` attributes:

```
T = numericity('WordLength', 32, 'FractionLength', 30)

T =

        DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: binary point scaling
           Signed: true
        WordLength: 32
    FractionLength: 30

F = fimath('RoundMode', 'floor', 'OverflowMode', 'wrap')

F =

        RoundMode: floor
    OverflowMode: wrap
    ProductMode: FullPrecision
MaxProductWordLength: 128
        SumMode: FullPrecision
    MaxSumWordLength: 128
    CastBeforeSum: true

a = fi(pi, T, F)

a =

    -0.8584
```

```
        DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: binary point scaling
          Signed: true
          WordLength: 32
        FractionLength: 30

          RoundMode: floor
          OverflowMode: wrap
          ProductMode: FullPrecision
        MaxProductWordLength: 128
          SumMode: FullPrecision
        MaxSumWordLength: 128
          CastBeforeSum: true

b = fi(pi/2, T, F)

b =

    1.5708
```

```
        DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: binary point scaling
          Signed: true
          WordLength: 32
        FractionLength: 30

          RoundMode: floor
          OverflowMode: wrap
          ProductMode: FullPrecision
        MaxProductWordLength: 128
          SumMode: FullPrecision
        MaxSumWordLength: 128
          CastBeforeSum: true
```

## Using fimath ProductMode and SumMode

The following example shows the differences among the FullPrecision, KeepLSB, KeepMSB, and SpecifyPrecision settings of the ProductMode and SumMode properties. To follow along, first set the following preferences:

```
p = fipref;
p.NumericTypeDisplay = 'short';
p.FimathDisplay = 'none';
p.LoggingMode = 'on';
F = fimath('OverflowMode','wrap','RoundMode','floor',...
    'CastBeforeSum',false);
warning off
format compact
```

Next define fi objects a and b. Both have signed 8-bit data types. The fraction length is automatically chosen for each fi object to yield the best possible precision:

```
a = fi(pi, true, 8)
a =
    3.1563
    s8,5
b = fi(exp(1), true, 8)
b =
    2.7188
    s8,5
```

### FullPrecision

Now set ProductMode and SumMode for a and b to FullPrecision and look at some results:

```
F.ProductMode = 'FullPrecision';
F.SumMode = 'FullPrecision';
a.fimath = F;
b.fimath = F;
a
a =
    3.1563    %011.00101
    s8,5
```



```

b
b =
    2.7188    %010.10111
           s8,5
a*b
ans =
    8.5811    %001000.1001010011
           s16,10
a+b
ans =
    5.8750    %0101.11100
           s9,5

```

In FullPrecision mode, the product word length grows to the sum of the word lengths of the operands. In this case, each operand has 8 bits, so the product word length is 16 bits. The product fraction length is the sum of the fraction lengths of the operands, in this case  $5 + 5 = 10$  bits.

The sum word length grows by one most significant bit to accommodate the possibility of a carry bit. The sum fraction length is aligned with the fraction lengths of the operands, and all fractional bits are kept for full precision. In this case, both operands have 5 fractional bits, so the sum has 5 fractional bits.

## KeepLSB

Now set ProductMode and SumMode for a and b to KeepLSB and look at some results:

```

F.ProductMode = 'KeepLSB';
F.ProductWordLength = 12;
F.SumMode = 'KeepLSB';
F.SumWordLength = 12;
a.fimath = F;
b.fimath = F;
a
a =
    3.1563    %011.00101
           s8,5

```

```
b
b =
    2.7188    %010.10111
         s8,5
a*b
ans =
    0.5811    %00.1001010011
         s12,10
a+b
ans =
    5.8750    %0000101.11100
         s12,5
```

In `KeepLSB` mode, you specify the word lengths and the least significant bits of results are automatically kept. This mode models the behavior of integer operations in the C language.

The product fraction length is the sum of the fraction lengths of the operands. In this case, each operand has 5 fractional bits, so the product fraction length is 10 bits. In this mode, all 10 fractional bits are kept. Overflow occurs because the full-precision result requires 6 integer bits, and only 2 integer bits remain in the product.

The sum fraction length is aligned with the fraction lengths of the operands, and in this model all least significant bits are kept. In this case, both operands had 5 fractional bits, so the sum has 5 fractional bits. The full-precision result requires 4 integer bits, and 7 integer bits remain in the sum, so no overflow occurs in the sum.

### KeepMSB

Now set `ProductMode` and `SumMode` for `a` and `b` to `KeepMSB` and look at some results:

```
F.ProductMode = 'KeepMSB';
F.ProductWordLength = 12;
F.SumMode = 'KeepMSB';
F.SumWordLength = 12;
a.fimath = F;
b.fimath = F;
```

```

a
a =
    3.1563    %011.00101
         s8,5
b
b =
    2.7188    %010.10111
         s8,5
a*b
ans =
    8.5781    %001000.100101
         s12,6
a+b
ans =
    5.8750    %0101.11100000
         s12,8

```

In KeepMSB mode, you specify the word lengths and the most significant bits of sum and product results are automatically kept. This mode models the behavior of many DSP devices where the product and sum are kept in double-wide registers, and the programmer chooses to transfer the most significant bits from the registers to memory after each operation.

The full-precision product requires 6 integer bits, and the fraction length of the product is adjusted to accommodate all 6 integer bits in this mode. No overflow occurs. However, the full-precision product requires 10 fractional bits, and only 6 are available. Therefore, precision is lost.

The full-precision sum requires 4 integer bits, and the fraction length of the sum is adjusted to accommodate all 4 integer bits in this mode. The full-precision sum requires only 5 fractional bits; in this case there are 8, so there is no loss of precision.

## SpecifyPrecision

Now set ProductMode and SumMode for a and b to SpecifyPrecision and look at some results:

```

F.ProductMode = 'SpecifyPrecision';
F.ProductWordLength = 8;

```

```
F.ProductFractionLength = 7;
F.SumMode = 'SpecifyPrecision';
F.SumWordLength = 8;
F.SumFractionLength = 7;
a.fimath = F;
b.fimath = F;
a
a =
    3.1563    %011.00101
         s8,5
b
b =
    2.7188    %010.10111
         s8,5
a*b
ans =
    0.5781    %0.1001010
         s8,7
a+b
ans =
   -0.1250    %1.1110000
         s8,7
```

In `SpecifyPrecision` mode, you must specify both word length and fraction length for sums and products. This example unwisely uses fractional formats for the products and sums, with 8-bit word lengths and 7-bit fraction lengths.

The full-precision product requires 6 integer bits, and the example specifies only 1, so the product overflows. The full-precision product requires 10 fractional bits, and the example only specifies 7, so there is precision loss in the product.

The full-precision sum requires 2 integer bits, and the example specifies only 1, so the sum overflows. The full-precision sum requires 5 fractional bits, and the example specifies 7, so there is no loss of precision in the sum.

## **fimath Object Functions**

The following functions operate directly on `fimath` objects:

- `add`
- `disp`
- `fimath`
- `isequal`
- `isfimath`
- `mpy`
- `sub`

You can learn about the functions associated with `fimath` objects in the Function Reference in the Fixed-Point Toolbox online documentation.



# Working with fipref Objects

---

Constructing fipref Objects (p. 5-2)	Teaches you how to create fipref objects
fipref Object Properties (p. 5-3)	Tells you how to find more information about the properties associated with fipref objects, and shows you how to set these properties
Using fipref Objects to Set Display Preferences (p. 5-5)	Gives examples of using fipref objects to set display preferences for fi objects
Using fipref Objects to Set Logging Preferences (p. 5-7)	Gives examples of using fipref objects to set logging preferences for fi objects
Using fipref Objects to Set Data Type Override Preferences (p. 5-12)	Describes how to use the fipref object to perform data type override
fipref Object Functions (p. 5-15)	Introduces the functions in the toolbox that operate directly on fipref objects

## Constructing `fipref` Objects

The `fipref` object defines the display and logging attributes for all `fi` objects. You can use the `fipref` constructor function to create a new object.

To get started, type

```
P = fipref
```

to create a default `fipref` object.

```
P =  
    NumberDisplay: 'RealWorldValue'  
    NumericTypeDisplay: 'full'  
    FimathDisplay: 'full'  
    LoggingMode: 'Off'  
    DataTypeOverride: 'ForceOff'
```

The syntax

```
P = fipref(... 'PropertyName', 'PropertyValue' ...)
```

allows you to set properties for a `fipref` object at object creation with property name/property value pairs.

Your `fipref` settings persist throughout your MATLAB session. Use `reset(fipref)` to return to the default settings during your session. Use `savefipref` to save your display preferences for subsequent MATLAB sessions.



## fipref Object Properties

The following properties of `fipref` objects are always writable:

- `FimathDisplay` — Display options for the `fimath` attributes of a `fi` object
- `DataTypeOverride` — Data type override options
- `LoggingMode` — Logging options for operations performed on `fi` objects
- `NumericTypeDisplay` — Display options for the numeric type attributes of a `fi` object
- `NumberDisplay` — Display options for the value of a `fi` object

These properties are described in detail in Chapter 9, “Property Reference”. There are two ways to specify properties for `fipref` objects in the Fixed-Point Toolbox. Refer to the following sections:

- “Setting `fipref` Properties at Object Creation” on page 5-3
- “Using Direct Property Referencing with `fipref`” on page 5-3

### Setting `fipref` Properties at Object Creation

You can set properties of `fipref` objects at the time of object creation by including properties after the arguments of the `fipref` constructor function. For example, to set `NumberDisplay` to `bin` and `NumericTypeDisplay` to `short`,

```
P = fipref('NumberDisplay', 'bin', 'NumericTypeDisplay', 'short')

P =
    NumberDisplay: 'bin'
  NumericTypeDisplay: 'short'
    FimathDisplay: 'full'
      LoggingMode: 'Off'
    DataTypeOverride: 'ForceOff'
```

### Using Direct Property Referencing with `fipref`

You can reference directly into a property for setting or retrieving `fipref` object property values using MATLAB structure-like referencing. You do this by using a period to index into a property by name.

For example, to get the NumberDisplay of P,

```
P.NumberDisplay
```

```
ans =
```

```
bin
```

To set the NumericTypeDisplay of P,

```
P.NumericTypeDisplay = 'full'
```

```
P =
```

```
    NumberDisplay: 'bin'  
 NumericTypeDisplay: 'full'  
    FimathDisplay: 'full'  
    LoggingMode: 'Off'  
    DataTypeOverride: 'ForceOff'
```

## Using fipref Objects to Set Display Preferences

You use the `fipref` object to dictate three aspects of the display of `fi` objects: how the value of a `fi` object is displayed, how the `fimath` properties are displayed, and how the `numericType` properties are displayed.

For example, the following shows the default `fipref` display for a `fi` object:

```
a = fi(pi)

a =

    3.1416

        DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: binary point scaling
                Signed: true
            WordLength: 16
        FractionLength: 13

            RoundMode: nearest
        OverflowMode: saturate
            ProductMode: FullPrecision
    MaxProductWordLength: 128
            SumMode: FullPrecision
        MaxSumWordLength: 128
            CastBeforeSum: true
```

Now, change the `fipref` display properties:

```
P = fipref;
P.NumberDisplay = 'bin';
P.NumericTypeDisplay = 'short';
P.FimathDisplay = 'none'

P =

    NumberDisplay: 'bin'
    NumericTypeDisplay: 'short'
    FimathDisplay: 'none'
    LoggingMode: 'Off'
```

```
        DataTypeOverride: 'ForceOff '  
a  
  
a =  
0110010010001000  
s16,13
```

## Using fipref Objects to Set Logging Preferences

When the `LoggingMode` property of the `fipref` object is set to `on`, overflows and underflows are logged as warnings. When `LoggingMode` is `on`, you can also have minimum and maximum values and the number of overflows, underflows, and quantization errors returned to you using functions. Refer to the following sections:

- “Logging Overflows and Underflows as Warnings” on page 5-7
- “Accessing Logged Information with Functions” on page 5-10

### Logging Overflows and Underflows as Warnings

Overflows and underflows are logged as warnings for all assignment, plus, minus, and multiplication operations when the `fipref` `LoggingMode` property is set to `on`. For example, try the following:

- 1 Create a signed `fi` object that is a vector of values from 1 to 5, with 8-bit word length and 6-bit fraction length.

```
a = fi(1:5,1,8,6);
```

- 2 Define the `fimath` object associated with `a`, and indicate that you will specify the sum and product word and fraction lengths.

```
F = a.fimath;  
F.SumMode = 'SpecifyPrecision';  
F.ProductMode = 'SpecifyPrecision';  
a.fimath = F;
```

- 3 Define the `fipref` object and turn on overflow and underflow logging.

```
P = fipref;  
P.LoggingMode = 'on';
```

- 4 Suppress the `numericType` and `fimath` displays.

```
P.NumericTypeDisplay = 'none';  
P.FimathDisplay = 'none';
```

**5** Specify the sum and product word and fraction lengths.

```
a.SumWordLength = 16;  
a.SumFractionLength = 15;  
a.ProductWordLength = 16;  
a.ProductFractionLength = 15;
```

**6** Warnings are displayed for overflows and underflows in assignment operations. For example, try:

```
a(1) = pi  
Warning: 1 overflow occurred in the fi assignment operation.
```

```
a =
```

```
    1.9844    1.9844    1.9844    1.9844    1.9844  
a(1) = double(eps(a))/10
```

```
Warning: 1 underflow occurred in the fi assignment operation.
```

```
a =
```

```
    0    1.9844    1.9844    1.9844    1.9844
```

**7** Warnings are displayed for overflows and underflows in addition and subtraction operations. For example, try:

```
a+a  
Warning: 12 overflows occurred in the fi + operation.
```

```
ans =
```

```
    0    1.0000    1.0000    1.0000    1.0000
```

```
a-a
```

```
Warning: 8 overflows occurred in the fi - operation.
```

```
ans =
```

```
    0    0    0    0    0
```

- 8** Warnings are displayed for overflows and underflows in multiplication operations. For example, try:

```
a.*a
Warning: 4 product overflows occurred in the fi .* operation.

ans =

    0    1.0000    1.0000    1.0000    1.0000

a*a'
Warning: 4 product overflows occurred in the fi * operation.
Warning: 3 sum overflows occurred in the fi * operation.

ans =

    1.0000
```

The final example above is a complex multiplication that requires both multiplication and addition operations. The warnings inform you of overflows and underflows in both.

Because overflows and underflows are logged as warnings, you can use the `dbstop` MATLAB function with the syntax

```
dbstop if warning
```

to find the exact lines in an M-file that are causing overflows or underflows.

Use

```
dbstop if warning fi:underflow
```

to stop only on lines that cause an underflow. Use

```
dbstop if warning fi:overflow
```

to stop only on lines that cause an overflow.

## Accessing Logged Information with Functions

When the fipref LoggingMode property is set to on, you can use the following functions to return logged information about assignment and creation operations to the MATLAB command line:

- `maxlog` — Returns the maximum real-world value
- `minlog` — Returns the minimum value
- `noverflows` — Returns the number of overflows
- `nunderflows` — Returns the number of underflows

LoggingMode must be set to on before you perform any operation in order to log information about it. To clear the log, use the function `resetlog`.

For example, consider the following. First turn logging on, then perform operations, and then finally get information about the operations:

```
fipref('LoggingMode','on');
x = fi([-1.5 eps 0.5], true, 16, 15);
x(1) = 3.0;
maxlog(x)

ans =

    3

minlog(x)

ans =

-1.5000

noverflows(x)

ans =

    2

nunderflows(x)
```



```
ans =
```

```
1
```

Next, reset the log and request the same information again. Note that the functions return empty [], because logging has been reset since the operations were run:

```
resetlog(x)
```

```
maxlog(x)
```

```
ans =
```

```
[]
```

```
minlog(x)
```

```
ans =
```

```
[]
```

```
noverflows(x)
```

```
ans =
```

```
[]
```

```
nunderflows(x)
```

```
ans =
```

```
[]
```

## Using fipref Objects to Set Data Type Override Preferences

Use the fipref `DataTypeOverride` property to override `fi` objects with singles, doubles, or scaled doubles. Data type override only occurs when the `fi` constructor function is called. Objects that are created while data type override is on have the overridden data type. They maintain that data type when data type override is later turned off. To obtain an object with a data type that is not the override data type, you must create an object when data type override is off:

```
p = fipref('DataTypeOverride', 'TrueDoubles')
```

```
p =
```

```
    NumberDisplay: 'RealWorldValue'  
    NumericTypeDisplay: 'full'  
    FimathDisplay: 'full'  
    LoggingMode: 'Off'  
    DataTypeOverride: 'TrueDoubles'
```

```
a = fi(pi)
```

```
a =
```

```
    3.1416
```

```
    DataTypeMode: double
```

```
p = fipref('DataTypeOverride', 'ForceOff')
```

```
p =
```

```
    NumberDisplay: 'RealWorldValue'  
    NumericTypeDisplay: 'full'  
    FimathDisplay: 'full'  
    LoggingMode: 'Off'  
    DataTypeOverride: 'ForceOff'
```

```
a
```

```
a =  
  
    3.1416  
  
    DataTypeMode: double  
  
b = fi(pi)  
  
b =  
  
    3.1416  
  
    DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: binary point scaling  
    Signed: true  
    WordLength: 16  
    FractionLength: 13
```

---

**Tip** To reset the `fipref` object to its default values use `reset(fipref)` or `reset(p)`, where `p` is a `fipref` object. This is useful to ensure that data type override and logging are off.

---

## Using Data Type Override to Help Set Fixed-Point Scaling

Choosing the scaling for the fixed-point variables in your algorithms can be difficult. In the Fixed-Point Toolbox, you can use a combination of data type override and min/max logging to help you discover the numerical ranges that your fixed-point data types need to cover. These ranges dictate the appropriate scalings for your fixed-point data types. In general, the procedure is

- 1 Implement your algorithm using fixed-point `fi` objects, using initial “best guesses” for word lengths and scalings.
- 2 Set the `fipref` `DataTypeOverride` property to `ScaledDoubles`, `TrueSingles`, or `TrueDoubles`.
- 3 Set the `fipref` `LoggingMode` property to `on`.

- 4 Use the `maxlog` and `minlog` functions to log the maximum and minimum values achieved by the variables in your algorithm in floating-point mode.
- 5 Set the `fipref.DataTypeOverride` property to `ForceOff`.
- 6 Use the information obtained in step 4 to set the fixed-point scaling for each variable in your algorithm such that the full numerical range of each variable is representable by its data type and scaling.

A detailed example of this process is shown in the Fixed-Point Toolbox “Fixed-Point Data Type Override, Min/Max Logging, and Scaling” demo.

## fipref Object Functions

The following functions operate directly on fipref objects:

- disp
- fipref
- reset
- savefipref

You can learn about the functions associated with fipref objects in the [Function Reference](#).



# Working with numerictype Objects

---

Constructing numerictype Objects (p. 6-2)	Teaches you how to create numerictype objects
numerictype Object Properties (p. 6-6)	Tells you how to find more information about the properties associated with numerictype objects, and shows you how to set these properties
The numerictype Structure (p. 6-10)	Presents the numerictype object as a MATLAB structure, and gives the valid fields and settings for those fields
Using numerictype Objects to Share Data Type and Scaling Settings (p. 6-13)	Gives an example of using a numerictype object to share modular data type and scaling information among multiple fi objects
numerictype Object Functions (p. 6-16)	Introduces the functions in the toolbox that operate directly on numerictype objects

## Constructing numerictype Objects

numerictype objects define the data type and scaling attributes of fi objects. You can create numerictype objects in the Fixed-Point Toolbox in one of two ways:

- You can use the numerictype constructor function to create a new object.
- You can use the numerictype constructor function to copy an existing numerictype object.

To get started, type

```
T = numerictype
```

to create a default numerictype object.

```
T =
```

```
        DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: binary point scaling
              Signed: true
            WordLength: 16
          FractionLength: 15
```

You can use the numerictype constructor function in the following ways:

- `T = numerictype` creates a default numerictype object.
- `T = numerictype(s)` creates a numerictype object with Fixed-point: unspecified scaling, signedness `s`, and 16-bit word length.
- `T = numerictype(s,w)` creates a numerictype object with Fixed-point: unspecified scaling, signedness `s`, and word length `w`.
- `T = numerictype(s,w,f)` creates a numerictype object with Fixed-point: binary point scaling, signedness `s`, word length `w`, and fraction length `f`.
- `T = numerictype(s,w,slope,bias)` creates a numerictype object with Fixed-point: slope and bias scaling, signedness `s`, word length `w`, slope, and bias.



- `T = numerictype(s,w,slopeadjustmentfactor,fixedexponent,bias)` creates a numerictype object with Fixed-point: slope and bias scaling, signedness `s`, word length `w`, slopeadjustmentfactor, fixedexponent, and bias.
- `T = numerictype(property1,value1, ...)` allows you to set properties for a numerictype object using property name/property value pairs.
- `T = numerictype(T1, property1, value1, ...)` allows you to make a copy of an existing numerictype object, while modifying any or all of the property values.
- `T = numerictype('double')` creates a double numerictype.
- `T = numerictype('single')` creates a single numerictype.
- `T = numerictype('boolean')` creates a Boolean numerictype.

## Examples of Constructing numerictype Objects

For example, the following creates a signed numerictype object with a 32-bit word length and 30-bit fraction length.

```
T = numerictype(1, 32, 30)
```

```
T =
```

```

        DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: binary point scaling
                Signed: true
            WordLength: 32
        FractionLength: 30

```

If you omit the argument `f`, scaling is unspecified.

```
T = numerictype(1, 32)
```

```
T =
```

```

        DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: unspecified scaling
                Signed: true
            WordLength: 32

```

If you omit the arguments `w` and `f`, the word length is automatically set to 16 bits and the scaling is unspecified.

```
T = numerictype(1)
```

```
T =
```

```
DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: unspecified scaling
Signed: true
WordLength: 16
```

### **Constructing a numerictype Object with Property Name/Property Value Pairs**

You can use property name/property value pairs to set numerictype properties when you create the object.

```
T = numerictype('Signed', true, 'DataTypeMode', ...
'Fixed-point: slope and bias', 'WordLength', 32, 'Slope', ...
2^-2, 'Bias', 4)
```

```
T =
```

```
DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: slope and bias scaling
Signed: true
WordLength: 32
Slope: 0.25
Bias: 4
```

## Copying a numerictype Object

To copy a numerictype object, simply use assignment as in the following example:

```
T = numerictype;  
U = T;  
isequal(T,U)
```

```
ans =
```

```
1
```

## numerictype Object Properties

All the properties of a numerictype object are writable. However, the numerictype properties of a fi object are not writable once the fi object has been created:

- Bias — Bias
- DataType — Data type category
- DataTypeMode — Data type and scaling mode
- FixedExponent — Fixed-point exponent
- SlopeAdjustmentFactor — Slope adjustment
- FractionLength — Fraction length of the stored integer value, in bits
- Scaling — Fixed-point scaling mode
- Signed — Signed or unsigned
- Slope — Slope
- WordLength — Word length of the stored integer value, in bits

These properties are described in detail in Chapter 9, “Property Reference”. There are two ways to specify properties for numerictype objects in the Fixed-Point Toolbox. Refer to the following sections:

- “Setting numerictype Properties at Object Creation” on page 6-6
- “Using Direct Property Referencing with numerictype Objects” on page 6-7
- “Setting numerictype Properties in the Model Explorer” on page 6-8

### Setting numerictype Properties at Object Creation

You can set properties of numerictype objects at the time of object creation by including properties after the arguments of the numerictype constructor function.

For example, to set the word length to 32 bits and the fraction length to 30 bits,

```
T = numerictype('WordLength', 32, 'FractionLength', 30)
```

```
T =
```

```

        DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: binary point scaling
              Signed: true
        WordLength: 32
    FractionLength: 30

```

## Using Direct Property Referencing with numerictype Objects

You can reference directly into a property for setting or retrieving numerictype object property values using MATLAB structure-like referencing. You do this by using a period to index into a property by name.

For example, to get the word length of T,

```
T.WordLength
```

```
ans =
```

```
32
```

To set the fraction length of T,

```
T.FractionLength = 31
```

```
T =
```

```

        DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: binary point scaling
              Signed: true
        WordLength: 32
    FractionLength: 31

```

## Setting numerictype Properties in the Model Explorer

You can view and change the properties for any numerictype object defined in the MATLAB workspace in the Model Explorer. Open the Model Explorer by selecting **View > Model Explorer** in any Simulink model, or by typing `daexplr` at the MATLAB command line.

The figure below shows the Model Explorer when you define the following numerictype objects in the MATLAB workspace:

```
T = numerictype
```

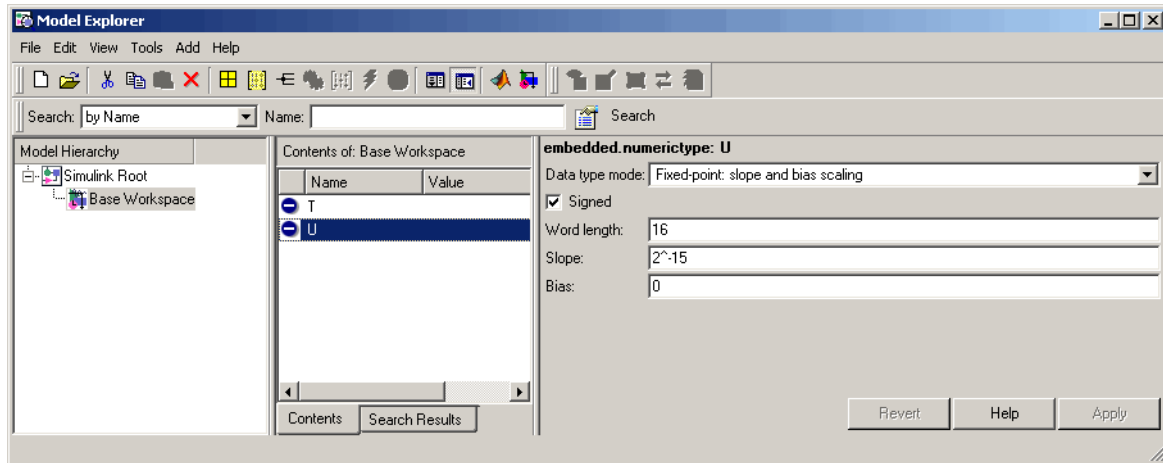
```
T =
```

```
      DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: binary point scaling  
             Signed: true  
      WordLength: 16  
      FractionLength: 15
```

```
U = numerictype('DataTypeMode', 'Fixed-point: slope and bias')
```

```
U =
```

```
      DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: slope and bias scaling  
             Signed: true  
      WordLength: 16  
             Slope: 2^-15  
             Bias: 0
```



Select the **Base Workspace** node in the **Model Hierarchy** pane to view the current objects in the **Contents** pane. When you select a numerictype object in the **Contents** pane, you can view and change its properties in the **Dialog** pane.

## The numerictype Structure

The numerictype object contains all the data type and scaling attributes of a fi object. The object acts the same way as any MATLAB structure, except that it only lets you set valid values for defined fields. The following table shows the possible settings of each field of the structure that are valid for fi objects.

<b>DataTypeMode</b>	<b>Data-Type</b>	<b>Scaling</b>	<b>Signed</b>	<b>Word-Length</b>	<b>Fraction-Length</b>	<b>Slope</b>	<b>Bias</b>
<i>Fully specified fixed-point data types</i>							
Fixed-point: binary point scaling	Fixed	BinaryPoint	1/0  true/ false	positive integer from 1 to 65,536	positive or negative integer	1	0
Fixed-point: slope and bias scaling	Fixed	SlopeBias	1/0  true/ false	positive integer from 1 to 65,536	N/A	any floating- point number	any floating- point number
<i>Partially specified fixed-point data type</i>							
Fixed-point: unspecified scaling	Fixed	Unspecified	1/0  true/ false	positive integer from 1 to 65,536	N/A	N/A	N/A
<i>Fully specified scaled double data types</i>							
Scaled double: binary point scaling	ScaledDouble	BinaryPoint	1/0  true/ false	positive integer from 1 to 65,536	positive or negative integer	1	0



<b>DataTypeMode</b>	<b>Data-Type</b>	<b>Scaling</b>	<b>Signed</b>	<b>Word- Length</b>	<b>Fraction- Length</b>	<b>Slope</b>	<b>Bias</b>
Scaled double: slope and bias scaling	ScaledDouble	SlopeBias	1/0 true/ false	positive integer from 1 to 65,536	N/A	any floating-point number	any floating-point number
<i>Partially specified scaled double data type</i>							
Scaled double: unspecified scaling	ScaledDouble	Unspecified	1/0 true/ false	positive integer from 1 to 65,536	N/A	N/A	N/A
<i>Built-in data types</i>							
double	double	N/A	1 true	64	0	1	0
single	single	N/A	1 true	32	0	1	0
boolean	boolean	N/A	0 false	1	0	1	0

You cannot change the numerictype properties of a fi object after fi object creation.

## Properties That Affect the Slope

The **Slope** field of the numerictype structure is related to the SlopeAdjustmentFactor and FixedExponent properties by

$$\text{slope} = \text{slope adjustment factor} \times 2^{\text{fixed exponent}}$$

The FixedExponent and FractionLength properties are related by

$$\text{fixed exponent} = -\text{fraction length}$$

If you set the `SlopeAdjustmentFactor`, `FixedExponent`, or `FractionLength` property, the **Slope** field is modified.

### Stored Integer Value and Real World Value

The numerictype `StoredIntegerValue` and `RealWorldValue` properties are related according to

$$\text{real-world value} = \text{stored integer value} \times 2^{(\text{fraction length})}$$

which is equivalent to

$$\begin{aligned} \text{real-world value} &= \text{stored integer value} \\ &\times (\text{slope adjustment factor} \times 2^{\text{fixed exponent}}) + \text{bias} \end{aligned}$$

If any of these properties is updated, the others are modified accordingly.

## Using numerictype Objects to Share Data Type and Scaling Settings

You can use a numerictype object to define common data type and scaling rules that you would like to use for many `fi` objects. You can then create multiple `fi` objects, using the same numerictype object for each. The following example shows the creation of a numerictype object, which is then used to create two `fi` objects with the same numerictype attributes:

```
format long g
T = numerictype('WordLength',32,'FractionLength',28)

T =

        DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: binary point scaling
           Signed: true
        WordLength: 32
    FractionLength: 28

a = fi(pi,T)

a =

        3.1415926553309

        DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: binary point scaling
           Signed: true
        WordLength: 32
    FractionLength: 28

        RoundMode: nearest
        OverflowMode: saturate
        ProductMode: FullPrecision
    MaxProductWordLength: 128
           SumMode: FullPrecision
    MaxSumWordLength: 128
    CastBeforeSum: true
```

```
b = fi(pi/2, T)

b =

    1.5707963258028

    DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: binary point scaling
        Signed: true
        WordLength: 32
    FractionLength: 28

        RoundMode: nearest
        OverflowMode: saturate
        ProductMode: FullPrecision
    MaxProductWordLength: 128
        SumMode: FullPrecision
    MaxSumWordLength: 128
    CastBeforeSum: true
```

The following example shows the creation of a numerictype object with [Slope Bias] scaling, which is then used to create two fi objects with the same numerictype attributes:

```
T = numerictype('scaling','slopebias','slope', 2^2, 'bias', 0)

T =

    DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: slope and bias scaling
        Signed: true
        WordLength: 16
        Slope: 2^2
        Bias: 0
```

```
c = fi(pi, T)
```

```
c =
```

```
4
```

```
    DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: slope and bias scaling
```

```
        Signed: true
```

```
    WordLength: 16
```

```
        Slope: 2^2
```

```
        Bias: 0
```

```
        RoundMode: nearest
```

```
    OverflowMode: saturate
```

```
        ProductMode: FullPrecision
```

```
MaxProductWordLength: 128
```

```
        SumMode: FullPrecision
```

```
MaxSumWordLength: 128
```

```
CastBeforeSum: true
```

```
d = fi(pi/2, T)
```

```
d =
```

```
0
```

```
    DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: slope and bias scaling
```

```
        Signed: true
```

```
    WordLength: 16
```

```
        Slope: 2^2
```

```
        Bias: 0
```

```
        RoundMode: nearest
```

```
    OverflowMode: saturate
```

```
        ProductMode: FullPrecision
```

```
MaxProductWordLength: 128
```

```
        SumMode: FullPrecision
```

```
MaxSumWordLength: 128
```

```
CastBeforeSum: true
```

### numerictype Object Functions

The following functions operate directly on numerictype objects:

- `divide`
- `isequal`
- `isnumerictype`

You can learn about the functions associated with numerictype objects in the Function Reference.

# Working with quantizer Objects

---

Constructing quantizer Objects (p. 7-2)	Explains how to create quantizer objects
quantizer Object Properties (p. 7-3)	Outlines the properties of the quantizer objects
Quantizing Data with quantizer Objects (p. 7-4)	Discusses using quantizer objects to quantize data —how and what quantizing data does
Transformations for Quantized Data (p. 7-6)	Offers a brief explanation of transforming quantized data between representations
quantizer Object Functions (p. 7-7)	Introduces the functions in the toolbox that operate directly on quantizer objects

## Constructing quantizer Objects

You can use quantizer objects to quantize data sets. You can create quantizer objects in the Fixed-Point Toolbox in one of two ways:

- You can use the `quantizer` constructor function to create a new object.
- You can use the `quantizer` constructor function to copy a quantizer object.

To create a quantizer object with default properties, type

```
q = quantizer

q =

    DataMode = fixed
    RoundMode = floor
    OverflowMode = saturate
    Format = [16 15]

    Max = reset
    Min = reset
    NOverflows = 0
    NUnderflows = 0
    NOperations = 0
```

To copy a quantizer object, simply use assignment as in the following example:

```
q = quantizer;
r = q;
isequal(q,r)

ans =

    1
```

A listing of all the properties of the quantizer object `q` you just created is displayed along with the associated property values. All property values are set to defaults when you construct a quantizer object this way. See “quantizer Object Properties” on page 7-3 for more details.



## quantizer Object Properties

The following properties of quantizer objects are always writable:

- `DataMode` — Type of arithmetic used in quantization
- `Format` — Data format of a quantizer object
- `OverflowMode` — Overflow-handling mode
- `RoundMode` — Rounding mode

See Chapter 9, “Property Reference” for more details about these properties, including their possible values.

For example, to create a fixed-point quantizer object with

- The `Format` property value set to `[16,14]`
- The `OverflowMode` property value set to `'saturate'`
- The `RoundMode` property value set to `'ceil'`

type

```
q =  
quantizer('datamode','fixed','format',[16,14],'overflowmode',...  
         'saturate','roundmode','ceil')
```

You do not have to include quantizer object property names when you set quantizer object property values.

For example, you can create quantizer object `q` from the previous example by typing

```
q = quantizer('fixed',[16,14],'saturate','ceil')
```

---

**Note** You do not have to include default property values when you construct a quantizer object. In this example, you could leave out `'fixed'` and `'saturate'`.

---

## Quantizing Data with quantizer Objects

You construct a quantizer object to specify the quantization parameters to use when you quantize data sets. You can use the `quantize` function to quantize data according to a quantizer object's specifications.

Once you quantize data with a quantizer object, its state values might change.

The following example shows

- How you use `quantize` to quantize data
- How quantization affects quantizer object states
- How you reset quantizer object states to their default values using `reset`

**1** Construct an example data set and a quantizer object.

```
randn('state',0);  
x = randn(100,4);  
q = quantizer([16,14]);
```

**2** Retrieve the values of the `max` and `noverflows` states.

```
q.max  
  
ans =  
reset  
  
q.noverflows  
  
ans =  
    0
```

**3** Quantize the data set according to the quantizer object's specifications.

```
y = quantize(q,x);
```

**4** Check the values of max and noverflows.

```
q.max
```

```
ans =  
2.3726
```

```
q.noverflows
```

```
ans =  
15
```

**5** Reset the quantizer states and check them.

```
reset(q)  
q.max
```

```
ans =  
reset
```

```
q.noverflows
```

```
ans =  
0
```

## Transformations for Quantized Data

You can convert data values from numeric to hexadecimal or binary according to a quantizer object's specifications.

Use

- num2bin to convert data to binary
- num2hex to convert data to hexadecimal
- hex2num to convert hexadecimal data to numeric
- bin2num to convert binary data to numeric

For example,

```
q = quantizer([3 2]);  
x = [0.75  -0.25  
     0.50  -0.50  
     0.25  -0.75  
     0     -1   ];  
b = num2bin(q,x)
```

```
b =  
011  
010  
001  
000  
111  
110  
101  
100
```

produces all two's complement fractional representations of 3-bit fixed-point numbers.

## quantizer Object Functions

The functions in the table below operate directly on quantizer objects.

bin2num	copyobj	denormalmax	denormalmin	disp
eps	exponentbias	exponentlength	exponentmax	exponentmin
fractionlength	get	hex2num	isequal	length
max	min	noperations	noverflows	num2bin
num2hex	num2int	nunderflows	quantize	quantizer
randquant	range	realmax	realmin	reset
round	set	tostring	wordlength	

You can learn about the functions associated with quantizer objects in the [Function Reference](#).



# Interoperability with Other Products

---

Using `fi` Objects with Simulink  
(p. 8-2)

Describes the ways you can use Fixed-Point Toolbox `fi` objects with Simulink models.

Using `fi` Objects with Signal Processing Blockset (p. 8-8)

Describes how to pass fixed-point data back and forth between the MATLAB workspace and Simulink models using Signal Processing Blockset blocks

Using the Fixed-Point Toolbox with Embedded MATLAB (p. 8-13)

Discusses the use of Fixed-Point Toolbox with Embedded MATLAB, including supported functions and limitations

Using `fi` Objects with Filter Design Toolbox (p. 8-32)

Provides a brief description of how to use `fi` objects with `dfilt` objects in the Filter Design Toolbox

## Using fi Objects with Simulink

This section describes the ways you can use Fixed-Point Toolbox `fi` objects with Simulink models.

### Reading Fixed-Point Data from the Workspace

You can read fixed-point data from the MATLAB workspace into a Simulink model via the From Workspace block. To do so, the data must be in structure format with a `fi` object in the values field. In array format, the From Workspace block only accepts real, double-precision data.

To read in `fi` data, the **Interpolate data** parameter of the From Workspace block must not be selected, and the **Form output after final data value by** parameter must be set to anything other than Extrapolation.

### Writing Fixed-Point Data to the Workspace

You can write fixed-point output from a model to the MATLAB workspace via the To Workspace block in either array or structure format. Fixed-point data written by a To Workspace block to the workspace in structure format can be read back into a Simulink model in structure format by a From Workspace block.

---

**Note** To write fixed-point data to the MATLAB workspace as a `fi` object, select the **Log fixed-point data as a fi object** check box on the To Workspace block dialog. Otherwise, fixed-point data is converted to double and written to the workspace as double.

---



For example, you can use the following code to create a structure in the MATLAB workspace with a `fi` object in the `values` field. You can then use the From Workspace block to bring the data into a Simulink model.

```
a = fi([sin(0:10)' sin(10:-1:0)'])
```

```
a =
```

```

      0   -0.5440
  0.8415  0.4121
  0.9093  0.9893
  0.1411  0.6570
 -0.7568 -0.2794
 -0.9589 -0.9589
 -0.2794 -0.7568
  0.6570  0.1411
  0.9893  0.9093
  0.4121  0.8415
 -0.5440      0

```

```

      DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: binary point scaling
              Signed: true
              WordLength: 16
      FractionLength: 15

```

```

              RoundMode: nearest
              OverflowMode: saturate
              ProductMode: FullPrecision
      MaxProductWordLength: 128
              SumMode: FullPrecision
      MaxSumWordLength: 128
              CastBeforeSum: true

```

```
s.signals.values = a
```

```
s =
```

```
signals: [1x1 struct]
```

```
s.signals.dimensions = 2

s =

    signals: [1x1 struct]

s.time = [0:10]

s =

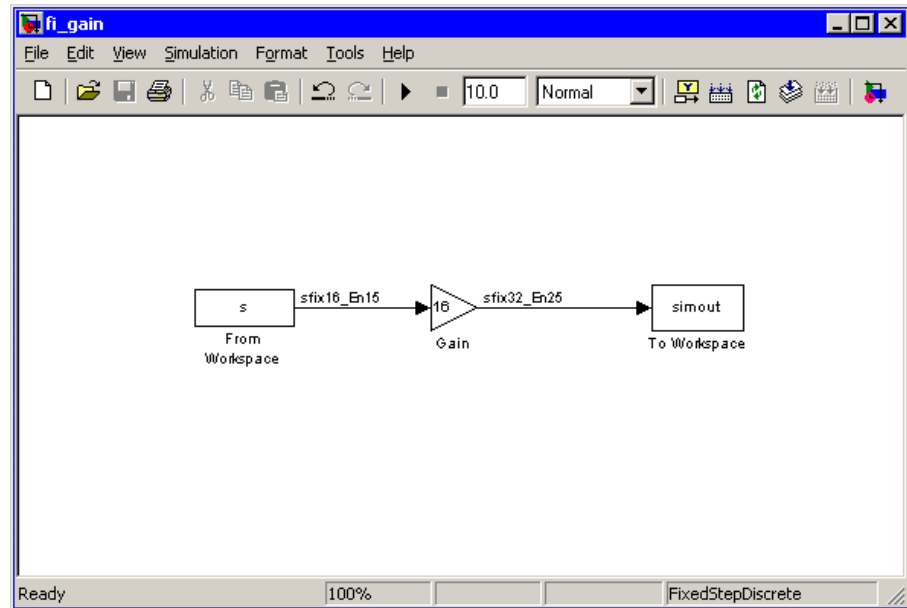
    signals: [1x1 struct]
    time: [11x1 double]
```

The From Workspace block in the following model has the `fi` structure `s` in the **Data** parameter.

Remember, to write fixed-point data to the MATLAB workspace as a `fi` object, select the **Log fixed-point data as a fi object** check box on the To Workspace block dialog. Otherwise, fixed-point data is converted to double and written to the workspace as double.

In the model, the following parameters in the **Solver** pane of the **Configuration Parameters** dialog have the indicated settings:

- **Start time** — 0.0
- **Stop time** — 10.0
- **Type** — Fixed-step
- **Solver** — discrete (no continuous states)
- **Fixed step size (fundamental sample time)** — 1.0



The To Workspace block writes the result of the simulation to the MATLAB workspace as a fi structure.

```
simout.signals.values
```

```
ans =
```

```

      0  -8.7041
 13.4634  6.5938
 14.5488 15.8296
  2.2578 10.5117
-12.1089 -4.4707
-15.3428 -15.3428
 -4.4707 -12.1089
 10.5117  2.2578
 15.8296 14.5488
  6.5938 13.4634
 -8.7041  0
  
```

```
DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: binary point scaling
    Signed: true
    WordLength: 32
    FractionLength: 25

    RoundMode: nearest
    OverflowMode: saturate
    ProductMode: FullPrecision
MaxProductWordLength: 128
    SumMode: FullPrecision
MaxSumWordLength: 128
    CastBeforeSum: true
```

## Setting the Value and Data Type of Block Parameters

You can use expressions from the Fixed-Point Toolbox to specify the value and data type of block parameters in Simulink. Refer to “Block Support for Data and Numeric Signal Types” in the Using Simulink documentation for more information.

## Logging Fixed-Point Signals

When fixed-point signals are logged to the MATLAB workspace via signal logging, they are always logged as `fi` objects. To enable signal logging for a signal, select the **Log signal data** option in the signal’s **Signal Properties** dialog box. For more information, refer to “Logging Signals” in the Using Simulink documentation.

When you log signals from a referenced model or Stateflow<sup>®</sup> chart in your model, the word lengths of `fi` objects may be larger than you expect. The word lengths of fixed-point signals in referenced models and Stateflow charts are logged as the next largest data storage container size.

## Accessing Fixed-Point Block Data During Simulation

Simulink provides an application program interface (API) that enables programmatic access to block data, such as block inputs and outputs, parameters, states, and work vectors, while a simulation is running. You can use this interface to develop MATLAB programs capable of accessing block data while a simulation is running or to access the data from the MATLAB

command line. Fixed-point signal information is returned to you via this API as `fi` objects. For more information on the API, refer to “Accessing Block Data During Simulation” in the Using Simulink documentation.

## Using `fi` Objects with Signal Processing Blockset

Fixed-Point Toolbox `fi` objects can be used to pass fixed-point data between the MATLAB workspace and models using Signal Processing Blockset blocks.

### Reading Fixed-Point Signals from the Workspace

You can read fixed-point data from the MATLAB workspace into a Simulink model using the Signal From Workspace and Triggered Signal From Workspace blocks from the Signal Processing Blockset. Enter the name of the defined `fi` variable in the **Signal** parameter of the Signal From Workspace or Triggered Signal From Workspace block.

### Writing Fixed-Point Signals to the Workspace

Fixed-point output from a model can be written to the MATLAB workspace via the Signal To Workspace or Triggered To Workspace block from the Signal Processing Blockset. The fixed-point data is always written as a 2-D or 3-D array.

---

**Note** To write fixed-point data to the MATLAB workspace as a `fi` object, select the **Log fixed-point data as a `fi` object** check box on the Signal To Workspace or Triggered To Workspace block dialog. Otherwise, fixed-point data is converted to `double` and written to the workspace as `double`.

---

For example, you can use the following code to create a `fi` object in the MATLAB workspace. You can then use the Signal From Workspace block to bring the data into a Simulink model.

```
a = fi([sin(0:10)' sin(10:-1:0)'])
```

```
a =
```

```

      0   -0.5440
  0.8415  0.4121
  0.9093  0.9893
  0.1411  0.6570
 -0.7568 -0.2794
 -0.9589 -0.9589
 -0.2794 -0.7568
  0.6570  0.1411
  0.9893  0.9093
  0.4121  0.8415
 -0.5440      0

```

```

      DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: binary point scaling
              Signed: true
              WordLength: 16
      FractionLength: 15

```

```

              RoundMode: nearest
              OverflowMode: saturate
              ProductMode: FullPrecision
      MaxProductWordLength: 128
              SumMode: FullPrecision
      MaxSumWordLength: 128
              CastBeforeSum: true

```

The Signal From Workspace block in the following model has these settings:

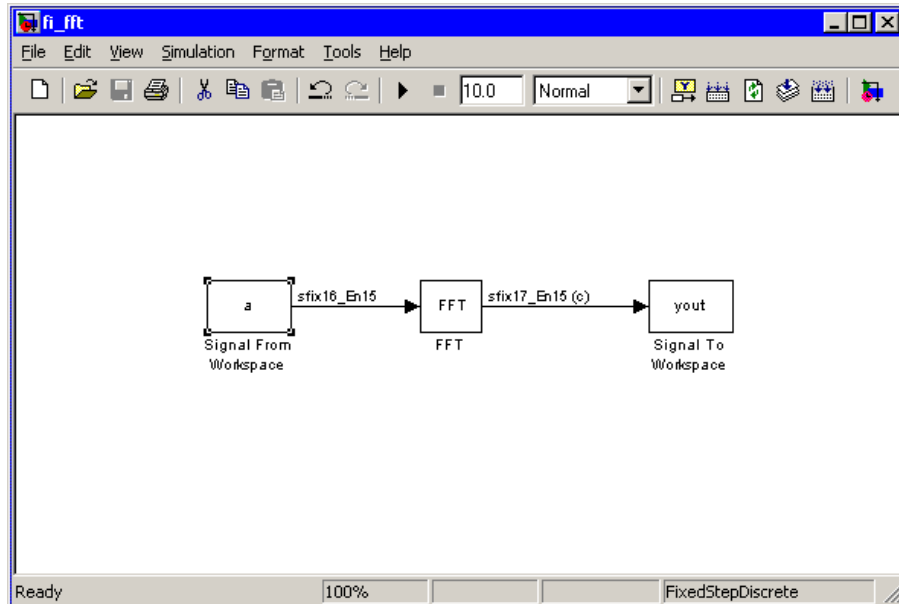
- **Signal** — a
- **Sample time** — 1
- **Samples per frame** — 2

- **Form output after final data value by** — Setting to zero

The following parameters in the **Solver** pane of the **Configuration Parameters** dialog have these settings:

- **Start time** — 0.0
- **Stop time** — 10.0
- **Type** — Fixed-step
- **Solver** — discrete (no continuous states)
- **Fixed step size (fundamental sample time)** — 1.0

Remember, to write fixed-point data to the MATLAB workspace as a **fi** object, select the **Log fixed-point data as a fi object** check box on the Signal To Workspace block dialog. Otherwise, fixed-point data is converted to double and written to the workspace as double.



The Signal To Workspace block writes the result of the simulation to the MATLAB workspace as a **fi** object.



```
yout =  
  
(:,:,1) =  
    0.8415   -0.1319  
   -0.8415   -0.9561  
  
(:,:,2) =  
    1.0504    1.6463  
    0.7682    0.3324  
  
(:,:,3) =  
   -1.7157   -1.2383  
    0.2021    0.6795  
  
(:,:,4) =  
    0.3776   -0.6157  
   -0.9364   -0.8979  
  
(:,:,5) =  
    1.4015    1.7508  
    0.5772    0.0678  
  
(:,:,6) =  
   -0.5440     0  
   -0.5440     0
```

DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: binary point scaling  
Signed: true  
WordLength: 17  
FractionLength: 15

RoundMode: nearest  
OverflowMode: saturate  
ProductMode: FullPrecision  
MaxProductWordLength: 128  
SumMode: FullPrecision  
MaxSumWordLength: 128  
CastBeforeSum: true

## Using the Fixed-Point Toolbox with Embedded MATLAB

The Embedded MATLAB Function block lets you compose a MATLAB language function in a Simulink model that generates embeddable code. When you simulate the model or generate code for a target environment, a function in an Embedded MATLAB Function block generates efficient C code. This code meets the strict memory and data type requirements of embedded target environments. In this way, Embedded MATLAB Function blocks bring the power of MATLAB for the embedded environment into Simulink.

For more information on using Embedded MATLAB, refer to the following sections in the Simulink documentation:

- Embedded MATLAB Function block reference page
- “Using the Embedded MATLAB Function Block”
- “Embedded MATLAB Function Block Reference”

### Supported Functions and Limitations of Fixed-Point Embedded MATLAB

You can use a significant subset of Fixed-Point Toolbox functions with Embedded MATLAB. The Fixed-Point Toolbox functions supported for use with Embedded MATLAB are listed in the table below. The following general limitations always apply to the use of the Fixed-Point Toolbox with Embedded MATLAB:

- Dot notation is not supported.
- Word lengths larger than 32 bits are not supported.
- It is illegal to change the `fimath` or `numericType` of a given variable once it has been created.
- The `double`, `single`, `boolean`, and `ScaledDouble` values of the `DataTypeMode` and `DataType` properties are not supported.
- convergent rounding is not supported.
- The false value of the `CastBeforeSum` property is not supported.
- The `numel` function works the same as MATLAB `numel` for `fi` objects in Embedded MATLAB, rather than returning 1 as in the Fixed-Point Toolbox.

To learn about the general limitations on the use of Embedded MATLAB that also apply to use with the Fixed-Point Toolbox, refer to “Unsupported MATLAB Features and Limitations” in the Simulink documentation.

---

**Note** To simulate models using fixed-point data types in Simulink, you must have a Simulink Fixed Point license.

---

### Fixed-Point Toolbox Functions Supported for Use with Embedded MATLAB

Function	Remarks/Limitations
abs	—
all	—
any	—
bitand	—
bitcmp	—
bitget	—
bitor	—
bitset	—
bitshift	—
bitxor	—
complex	—
conj	—
ctranspose	—
disp	—
divide	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Any non-<code>fi</code> input must be constant; that is, its value must be known at compile time so that it can be cast to a <code>fi</code> object</li> <li>• Complex and imaginary divisors are not supported</li> </ul>
double	—
end	—

**Fixed-Point Toolbox Functions Supported for Use with Embedded MATLAB (Continued)**

<b>Function</b>	<b>Remarks/Limitations</b>
eps	—
eq	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Not supported for fixed-point signals with different biases</li> </ul>
fi	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use to create a fixed-point constant or variable in Embedded MATLAB</li> <li>• The syntax <code>fi('PropertyName',PropertyValue...)</code> is not supported. To use property name/property value pairs, you must first specify the value <code>v</code> of the <code>fi</code> object as in <code>fi(v,'PropertyName',PropertyValue...)</code></li> <li>• Works for constant input values only; that is, the value of the input must be known at compile time</li> <li>• <code>numericType</code> object information must be available for nonfixed-point Simulink inputs</li> </ul>
fimath	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Fixed-point signals coming in to an Embedded MATLAB Function block from Simulink are assigned the <code>fimath</code> object defined in the Embedded MATLAB Function dialog in the Model Explorer</li> <li>• Use to create <code>fimath</code> objects in Embedded MATLAB code</li> </ul>
ge	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Not supported for fixed-point signals with different biases</li> </ul>
gt	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Not supported for fixed-point signals with different biases</li> </ul>
horzcat	—
imag	—
int8, int16, int32	—
iscolumn	—
isempty	—
isfi	—
isfimath	—
isfinite	—
isinf	—

**Fixed-Point Toolbox Functions Supported for Use with Embedded MATLAB (Continued)**

<b>Function</b>	<b>Remarks/Limitations</b>
isnan	—
isnumeric	—
isnumericity	—
isreal	—
isrow	—
isscalar	—
assigned	—
isvector	—
le	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Not supported for fixed-point signals with different biases</li> </ul>
length	—
logical	—
lowerbound	—
lsb	—
lt	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Not supported for fixed-point signals with different biases</li> </ul>
max	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Supported for 1-D and 2-D arrays only</li> </ul>
min	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Supported for 1-D and 2-D arrays only</li> </ul>
minus	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Any non-<code>fi</code> input must be constant; that is, its value must be known at compile time so that it can be cast to a <code>fi</code> object</li> </ul>
mtimes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Any non-<code>fi</code> input must be constant; that is, its value must be known at compile time so that it can be cast to a <code>fi</code> object</li> </ul>
ndims	—
ne	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Not supported for fixed-point signals with different biases</li> </ul>
numberofelements	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>numberofelements</code> and <code>numel</code> both work the same as MATLAB <code>numel</code> for <code>fi</code> objects in Embedded MATLAB</li> </ul>

**Fixed-Point Toolbox Functions Supported for Use with Embedded MATLAB (Continued)**

<b>Function</b>	<b>Remarks/Limitations</b>
numerictype	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Fixed-point signals coming in to an Embedded MATLAB Function block from Simulink are assigned a numerictype object that is populated with the signal's data type and scaling information</li> <li>• Returns the data type when the input is a nonfixed-point signal</li> <li>• Use to create numerictype objects in Embedded MATLAB code</li> </ul>
plus	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Any non-fi input must be constant; that is, its value must be known at compile time so that it can be cast to a fi object</li> </ul>
pow2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• For the syntax pow2(a, K), K must be a constant; that is, its value must be known at compile time so that it can be cast to a fi object</li> </ul>
range	—
real	—
realmax	—
realmin	—
repmat	—
rescale	—
reshape	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Supported for 1-D and 2-D arrays only</li> </ul>
sign	—
single	—
size	—
subsasgn	—
subsref	—
sum	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Supported for 1-D and 2-D arrays only</li> </ul>
times	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Any non-fi input must be constant; that is, its value must be known at compile time so that it can be cast to a fi object</li> </ul>
transpose	—
uint8, uint16, uint32	—
uminus	—

**Fixed-Point Toolbox Functions Supported for Use with Embedded MATLAB (Continued)**

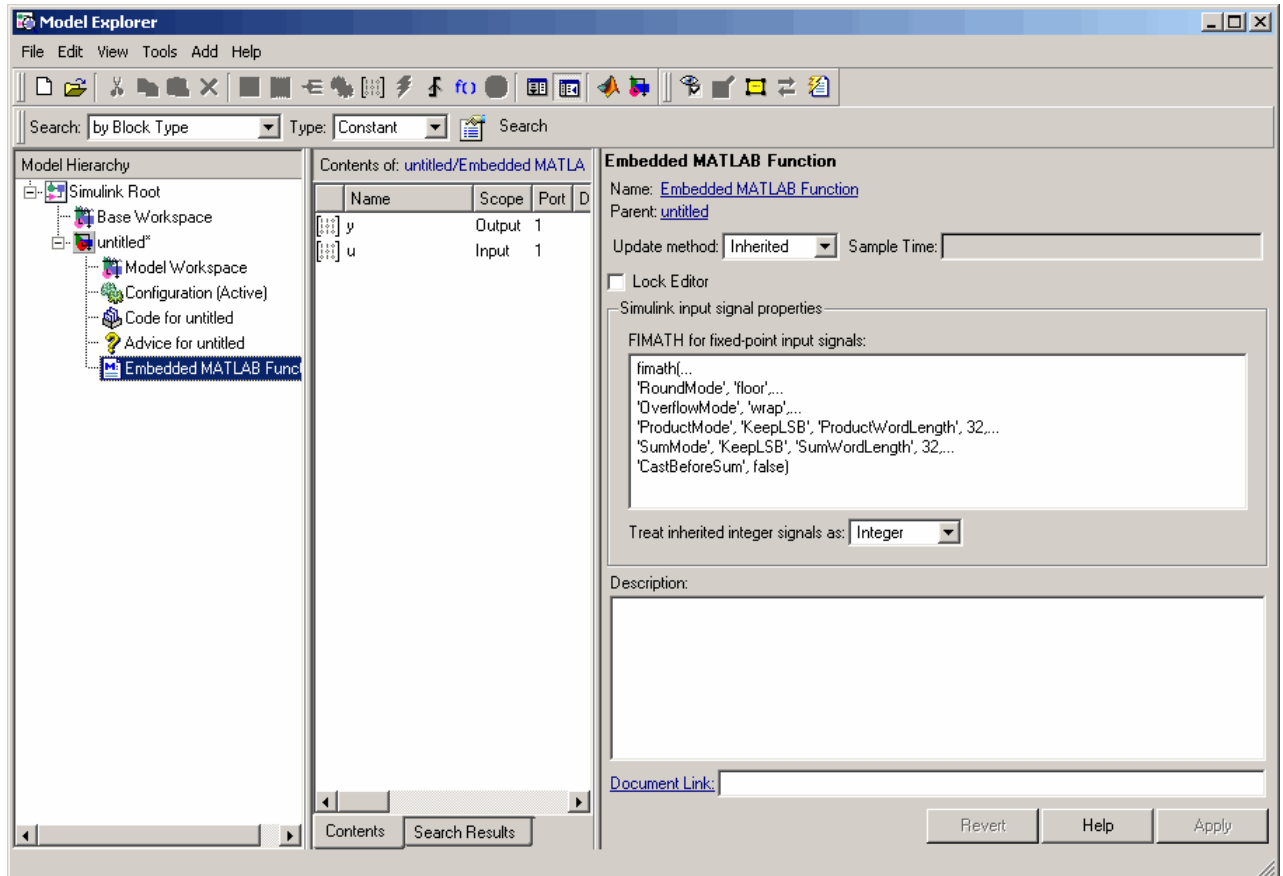
<b>Function</b>	<b>Remarks/Limitations</b>
uplus	—
upperbound	—
vertcat	—

**Using the Model Explorer with Fixed-Point Embedded MATLAB**

You can specify parameters for an Embedded MATLAB Function block in a fixed-point model using the Model Explorer. Try the following:

- 1** Type `emlnew` at the MATLAB command line to open a new Simulink model populated with an Embedded MATLAB Function block.
- 2** Open the Model Explorer by selecting **View > Model Explorer** from your model.
- 3** Expand the **untitled\*** node in the **Model Hierarchy** pane of the Model Explorer and select the **Embedded MATLAB Function** node. The Model Explorer now appears as follows:





The parameters in the **Simulink input signal properties** group box in the **Dialog** pane apply to Embedded MATLAB Function blocks in models that use fixed-point data types.

### FIMATH for fixed-point input signals

Define the `fimath` object to be associated with Simulink fixed-point or integer signals entering the Embedded MATLAB Function block as inputs. You can do this in either of two ways:

- Fully define the `fimath` object in the parameter value box using Fixed-Point Toolbox MATLAB code.

- Enter a variable name of a `fimath` object that is defined in the MATLAB or model workspace.

The default `fimath` object entered for this parameter emulates C-style math.

### **Treat inherited integer signals as**

Choose whether to treat inherited integer signals as integers or fixed-point data.

- If you select `Integer`, Simulink integer inputs to the Embedded MATLAB Function block will be treated as MATLAB integers.
- If you select `Fixed-point`, Simulink integer inputs to the Embedded MATLAB Function block will be treated as Fixed-Point Toolbox `fi` objects.

### **Sharing Fixed-Point Embedded MATLAB Models**

Sometimes you might need to share a fixed-point model using the Embedded MATLAB Function block with a coworker. When you do, make sure to move any variables you define in the MATLAB workspace, including `fimath` objects, to the model workspace. For example, try the following:

- 1** Type `emlnew` at the MATLAB command line to open a new Simulink model populated with an Embedded MATLAB Function block.
- 2** Define a `fimath` object in the MATLAB workspace that you want to use for any Simulink fixed-point signal entering the Embedded MATLAB Function block as an input:

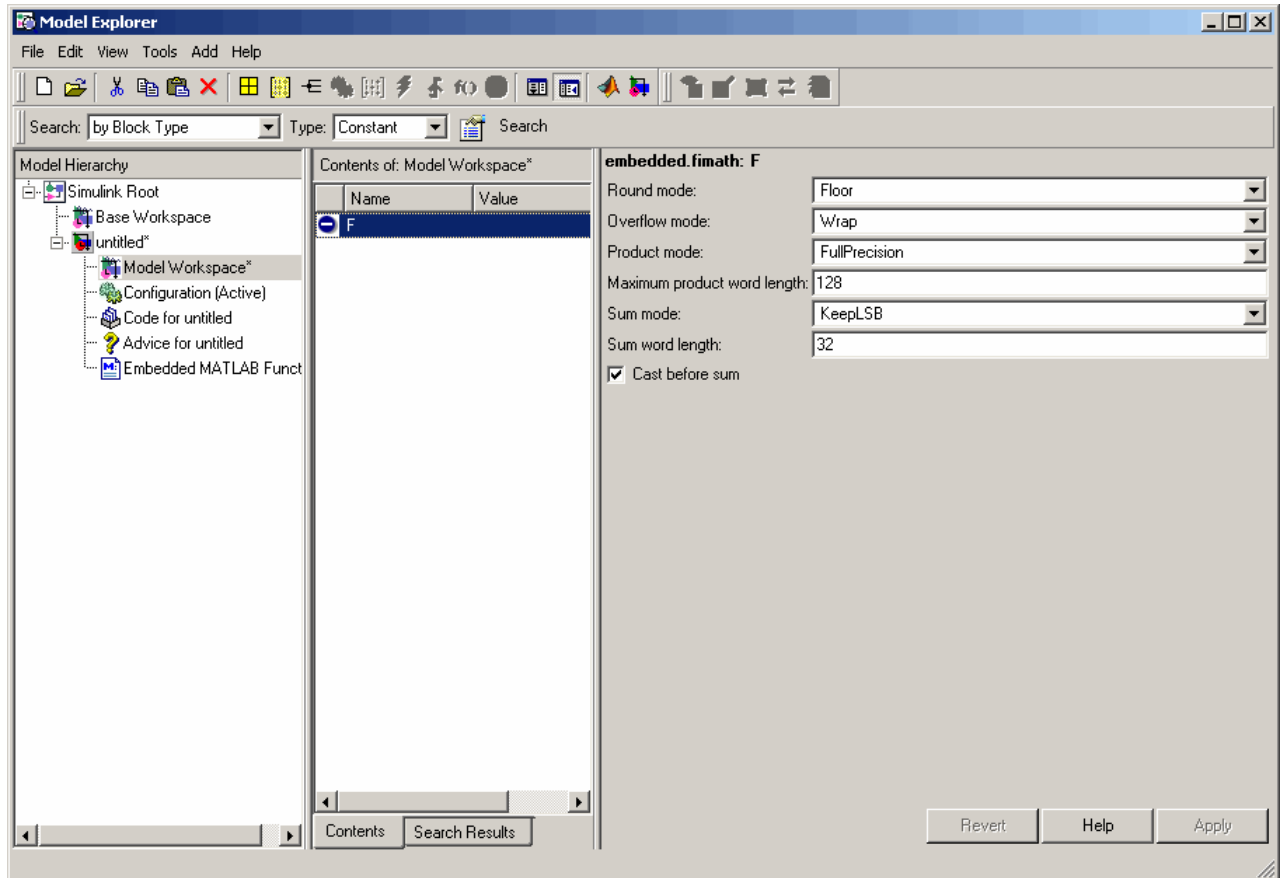
```
F = fimath('RoundMode','Floor','OverflowMode','Wrap',...  
          'ProductMode','KeepLSB','ProductWordLength',32,...  
          'SumMode','KeepLSB','SumWordLength',32)
```

```
F =
```

```
          RoundMode: floor  
          OverflowMode: wrap  
          ProductMode: KeepLSB  
          ProductWordLength: 32
```

```
SumMode: KeepLSB
SumWordLength: 32
CastBeforeSum: true
```

- 3** Open the Model Explorer by selecting **View > Model Explorer** from your model.
- 4** Expand the **untitled\*** node in the **Model Hierarchy** pane of the Model Explorer and select the **Embedded MATLAB Function** node.
- 5** Enter the variable **F** into the **FIMATH for fixed-point input signals** parameter on the **Dialog** pane and click **Apply**. You have now defined the **fimath** object for any Simulink fixed-point signal entering the Embedded MATLAB Function as an input.
- 6** Select the **Base Workspace** node in the **Model Hierarchy** pane. You can see the variable **F** that you have defined in the MATLAB workspace listed in the **Contents** pane. If you were to send this model to a coworker, they would have to define that same variable in their MATLAB workspace to get the same results as you with this model.
- 7** Cut the variable **F** from the base workspace and paste it into the model workspace listed under the node for your model, in this case **untitled\***. The Model Explorer now looks like this:



You can now e-mail your model to a coworker, and because the variables needed to run the model are included in the workspace of the model itself, your coworker can run the model and get the correct results without performing any extra steps.

### Example: Implementing a Fixed-Point Direct Form FIR Using Embedded MATLAB

This example leads you through creating a fixed-point, low-pass, direct form FIR filter in Simulink using the Fixed-Point Toolbox and Embedded MATLAB in the following sections:

- “I. Program the Embedded MATLAB Block” on page 8-23
- “II. Prepare the Inputs” on page 8-24
- “III. Create the Model” on page 8-25
- “IV. Define the Input fimath Using the Model Explorer” on page 8-28
- “V. Run the Simulation” on page 8-30

## I. Program the Embedded MATLAB Block

- 1 Place an Embedded MATLAB Function block in a new model. The block is located in the Simulink User-Defined Functions library.
- 2 Save your model as `eML_fi.mdl`.
- 3 Double-click the Embedded MATLAB Function block in your model to open the Embedded MATLAB Editor. Type or copy and paste the following MATLAB code, including comments, into the Editor:

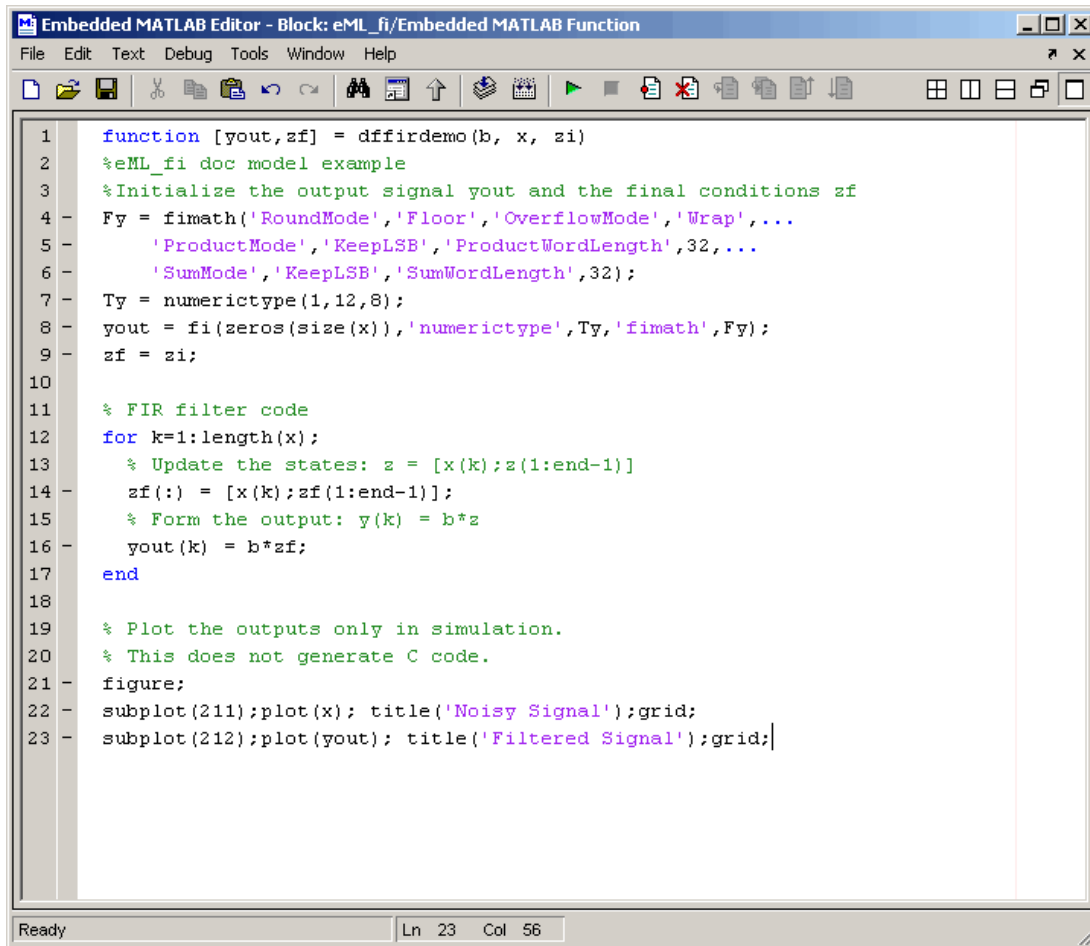
```
function [yout,zf] = dffirdemo(b, x, zi)
%eML_fi doc model example
%Initialize the output signal yout and the final conditions zf
Fy = fimath('RoundMode','Floor','OverflowMode','Wrap',...
    'ProductMode','KeepLSB','ProductWordLength',32,...
    'SumMode','KeepLSB','SumWordLength',32);
Ty = numericity(1,12,8);
yout = fi(zeros(size(x)),'numericity',Ty,'fimath',Fy);
zf = zi;

% FIR filter code
for k=1:length(x);
    % Update the states: z = [x(k);z(1:end-1)]
    zf(:) = [x(k);zf(1:end-1)];
    % Form the output: y(k) = b*z
    yout(k) = b*zf;
end

% Plot the outputs only in simulation.
% This does not generate C code.
figure;
```

```
subplot(211);plot(x); title('Noisy Signal');grid;
subplot(212);plot(yout); title('Filtered Signal');grid;
```

The Editor should now appear as follows:



```
Embedded MATLAB Editor - Block: eML_fi/Embedded MATLAB Function
File Edit Text Debug Tools Window Help
[Icons]
1 function [yout,zf] = dffirdemo(b, x, zi)
2 %eML_fi doc model example
3 %Initialize the output signal yout and the final conditions zf
4 Fy = fimath('RoundMode','Floor','OverflowMode','Wrap',...
5 'ProductMode','KeepLSB','ProductWordLength',32,...
6 'SumMode','KeepLSB','SumWordLength',32);
7 Ty = numericitytype(1,12,8);
8 yout = fi(zeros(size(x)), 'numericitytype', Ty, 'fimath', Fy);
9 zf = zi;
10
11 % FIR filter code
12 for k=1:length(x);
13 % Update the states: z = [x(k);z(1:end-1)]
14 zf(:) = [x(k);zf(1:end-1)];
15 % Form the output: y(k) = b*z
16 yout(k) = b*zf;
17 end
18
19 % Plot the outputs only in simulation.
20 % This does not generate C code.
21 figure;
22 subplot(211);plot(x); title('Noisy Signal');grid;
23 subplot(212);plot(yout); title('Filtered Signal');grid;
```

Ready Ln 23 Col 56

## II. Prepare the Inputs

Define the filter coefficients  $b$ , noise  $x$ , and initial conditions  $zi$  by typing the following at the MATLAB command line:

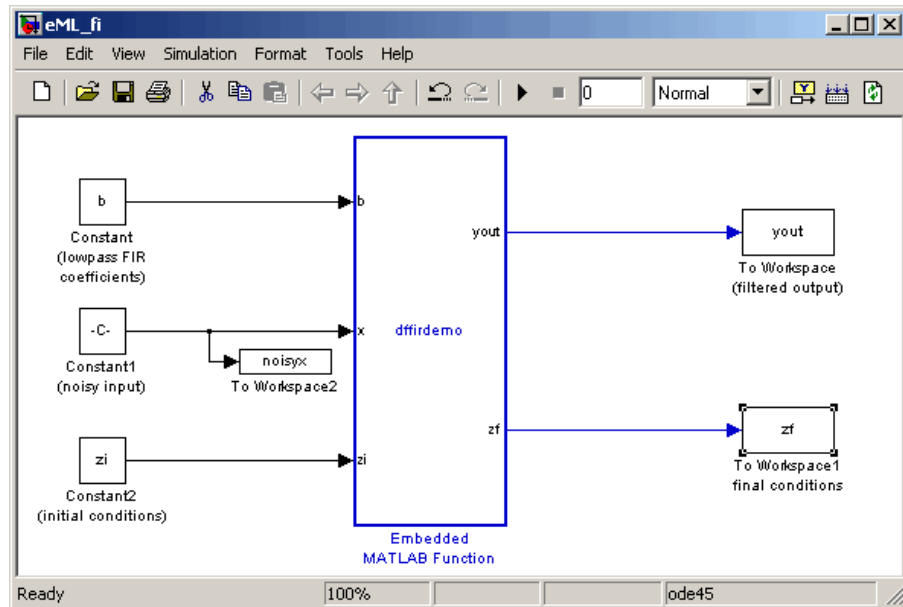
```

b = fi_fir_coefficients;
load mtlb
x = mtlb;
n = length(x);
noise = sin(2*pi*2140*(0:n-1)'./Fs);
x = x + noise;
zi = zeros(length(b),1);

```

### III. Create the Model

- 1 Add blocks to your model to create the system shown below.



**2** Set the block parameters in the model to the following values:

<b>Block</b>	<b>Parameter</b>	<b>Value</b>
<b>Constant</b>	<b>Constant value</b>	b
	<b>Interpret vector parameters as 1-D</b>	unselected
	<b>Sampling mode</b>	Sample based
	<b>Sample time</b>	inf
	<b>Output data type mode</b>	Specify via dialog
	<b>Output data type</b>	sfix(12)
	<b>Output scaling mode</b>	Use specified scaling
	<b>Output scaling value</b>	2 <sup>-12</sup>
<b>Constant1</b>	<b>Constant value</b>	x+noise
	<b>Interpret vector parameters as 1-D</b>	unselected
	<b>Sampling mode</b>	Sample based
	<b>Sample time</b>	1
	<b>Output data type mode</b>	Specify via dialog
	<b>Output data type</b>	sfix(12)
	<b>Output scaling mode</b>	Use specified scaling
	<b>Output scaling value</b>	2 <sup>-8</sup>



<b>Block</b>	<b>Parameter</b>	<b>Value</b>
<b>Constant2</b>	<b>Constant value</b>	zi
	<b>Interpret vector parameters as 1-D</b>	unselected
	<b>Sampling mode</b>	Sample based
	<b>Sample time</b>	inf
	<b>Output data type mode</b>	Specify via dialog
	<b>Output data type</b>	sfix(12)
	<b>Output scaling mode</b>	Use specified scaling
	<b>Output scaling value</b>	2 <sup>-8</sup>
<b>To Workspace</b>	<b>Variable name</b>	yout
	<b>Limit data points to last</b>	inf
	<b>Decimation</b>	1
	<b>Sample time</b>	-1
	<b>Save format</b>	Array
	<b>Log fixed-point data as a fi object</b>	selected

Block	Parameter	Value
To Workspace1	Variable name	zf
	Limit data points to last	inf
	Decimation	1
	Sample time	1
	Save format	Array
	Log fixed-point data as a fi object	selected
To Workspace2	Variable name	noisyx
	Limit data points to last	inf
	Decimation	1
	Sample time	1
	Save format	Array
	Log fixed-point data as a fi object	selected

#### IV. Define the Input fimath Using the Model Explorer

- 1 Define the `fimath` object to be used for the Embedded MATLAB block inputs in the MATLAB workspace. Note that it must have the same properties as the `fimath` object defined in your Embedded MATLAB code in order to perform arithmetic between the quantities:

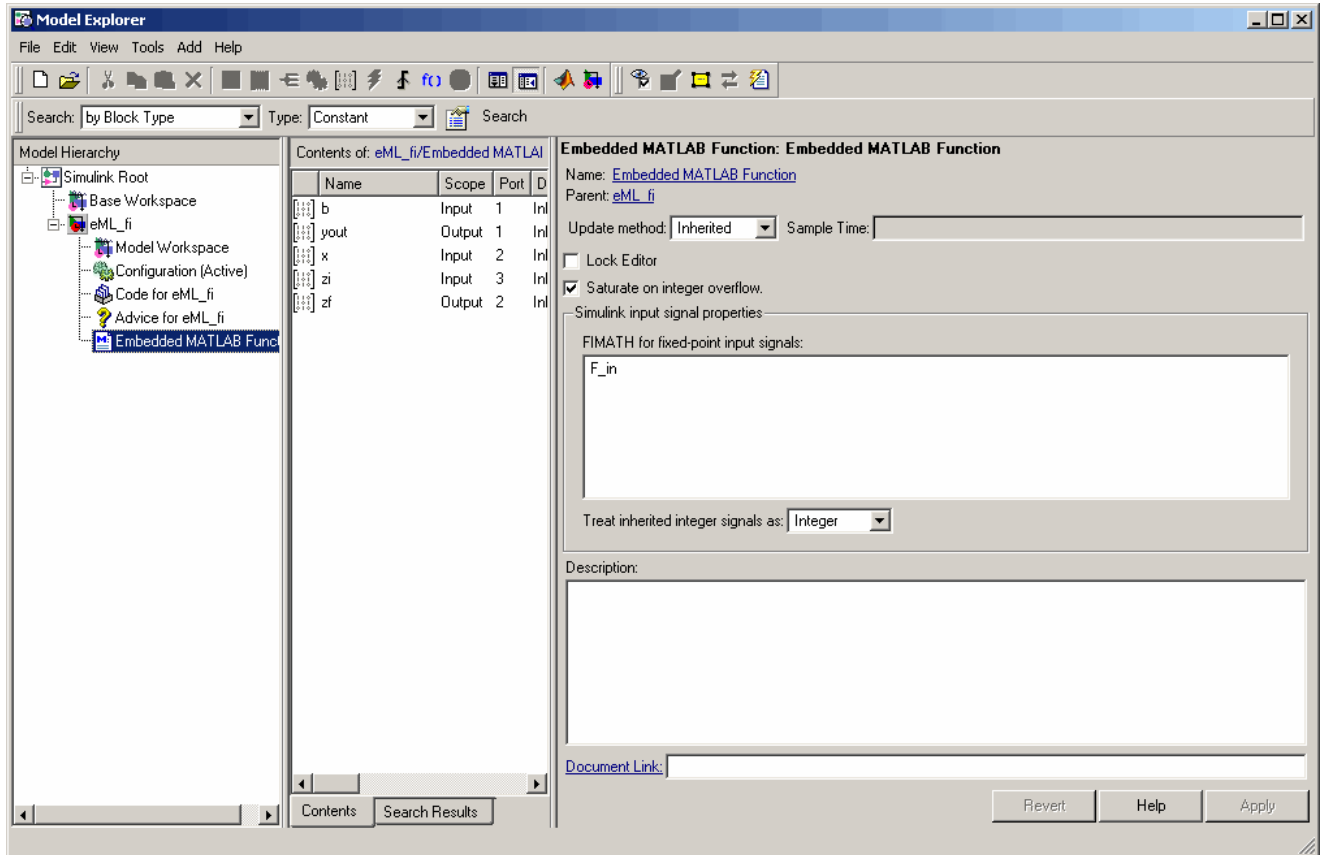
```
F_in = fimath('RoundMode','Floor','OverflowMode','Wrap',...
             'ProductMode','KeepLSB','ProductWordLength',32,...
             'SumMode','KeepLSB','SumWordLength',32)
```

```
F_in =
```

```
RoundMode: floor
OverflowMode: wrap
```

```
ProductMode: KeepLSB
ProductWordLength: 32
SumMode: KeepLSB
SumWordLength: 32
CastBeforeSum: true
```

- 2** Open the Model Explorer for the model by selecting **View > Model Explorer**.
- 3** Click the **Base Workspace** node in the **Model Hierarchy** pane of the Model Explorer. You see the fimath F\_in you just defined listed in the **Contents** pane.
- 4** Click the **eML\_fi > Embedded MATLAB Function** node in the **Model Hierarchy** pane. The dialog for the Embedded MATLAB Function block appears in the **Dialog** pane of the Model Explorer.
- 5** Enter F\_in in the **FIMATH for fixed-point input signals** parameter on the Embedded MATLAB Function dialog in the **Dialog** pane of the Model Explorer and click **Apply**. This step sets the fimath object for the three inputs entering into the Embedded MATLAB Function block in your model. The Model Explorer now appears as follows:



### V. Run the Simulation

- 1 You can now run the simulation by selecting your model and typing **Ctrl+T**. While the simulation is running, information will output to the MATLAB command line. You can look at the plots of the noisy signal and the filtered signal.
- 2 Now build your Embedded MATLAB code by selecting your model and typing **Ctrl+B**. While the code is building, information will output to the MATLAB command line. A directory called eML\_fi\_grt\_rtw will be created in your current working directory.

- 3** Navigate to `eML_fi_grt_rtw > eML_fi.c`. In this file you can see the code that has been generated from your model. Search on the comment in your code

```
%eML_fi doc model example
```

This brings you to the beginning of the section of the code that is generated from your Embedded MATLAB Function block.

## Using `fi` Objects with Filter Design Toolbox

When the `Arithmetic` property is set to `'fixed'`, you can use an existing `fi` object as the input, states, or coefficients of a `dfilt` object in the Filter Design Toolbox. Also, fixed-point filters in the Filter Design Toolbox return `fi` objects as outputs. Refer to the Filter Design Toolbox documentation for more information.

# Property Reference

---

<code>fi</code> Object Properties (p. 9-2)	Defines the <code>fi</code> object properties
<code>fimath</code> Object Properties (p. 9-6)	Defines the <code>fimath</code> object properties
<code>fipref</code> Object Properties (p. 9-14)	Defines the <code>fipref</code> object properties
<code>numerictype</code> Object Properties (p. 9-17)	Defines the <code>numerictype</code> object properties
<code>quantizer</code> Object Properties (p. 9-21)	Defines the <code>quantizer</code> object properties

## fi Object Properties

The properties associated with `fi` objects are described in the following sections in alphabetical order.

---

**Note** The `fimath` properties and `numericType` properties are also properties of the `fi` object. Refer to “`fimath` Object Properties” on page 9-6 and “`numericType` Object Properties” on page 9-17 for more information.

---

### **bin**

Stored integer value of a `fi` object in binary.

### **data**

Numerical real-world value of a `fi` object.

### **dec**

Stored integer value of a `fi` object in decimal.

### **double**

Real-world value of a `fi` object stored as a MATLAB double.

### **fimath**

`fimath` object associated with a `fi` object. The default `fimath` object has the following settings:

```
RoundMode: nearest
OverflowMode: saturate
ProductMode: FullPrecision
MaxProductWordLength: 128
SumMode: FullPrecision
MaxSumWordLength: 128
CastBeforeSum: true
```



To learn more about `fi`math properties, refer to “`fi`math Object Properties” on page 9-6.

## hex

Stored integer value of a `fi` object in hexadecimal.

## int

Stored integer value of a `fi` object, stored in a built-in MATLAB integer data type. You can also use `int8`, `int16`, `int32`, `uint8`, `uint16`, and `uint32` to get the stored integer value of a `fi` object in these formats.

## NumericType

Structure containing all the data type and scaling attributes of a `fi` object. The `numericType` object acts the same way as any MATLAB structure, except that it only lets you set valid values for defined fields. The following table shows the possible settings of each field of the structure that are valid for `fi` objects.

<b>DataTypeMode</b>	<b>Data-Type</b>	<b>Scaling</b>	<b>Signed</b>	<b>Word-Length</b>	<b>Fraction-Length</b>	<b>Slope</b>	<b>Bias</b>
<i>Fully specified fixed-point data types</i>							
Fixed-point: binary point scaling	Fixed	BinaryPoint	1/0  true/ false	positive integer from 1 to 65,536	positive or negative integer	1	0
Fixed-point: slope and bias scaling	Fixed	SlopeBias	1/0  true/ false	positive integer from 1 to 65,536	N/A	any floating- point number	any floating- point number
<i>Partially specified fixed-point data type</i>							

<b>DataTypeMode</b>	<b>Data-Type</b>	<b>Scaling</b>	<b>Signed</b>	<b>Word-Length</b>	<b>Fraction-Length</b>	<b>Slope</b>	<b>Bias</b>
Fixed-point: unspecified scaling	Fixed	Unspecified	1/0  true/ false	positive integer from 1 to 65,536	N/A	N/A	N/A
<i>Fully specified scaled double data types</i>							
Scaled double: binary point scaling	ScaledDouble	BinaryPoint	1/0  true/ false	positive integer from 1 to 65,536	positive or negative integer	1	0
Scaled double: slope and bias scaling	ScaledDouble	SlopeBias	1/0  true/ false	positive integer from 1 to 65,536	N/A	any floating- point number	any floating- point number
<i>Partially specified scaled double data type</i>							
Scaled double: unspecified scaling	ScaledDouble	Unspecified	1/0  true/ false	positive integer from 1 to 65,536	N/A	N/A	N/A
<i>Built-in data types</i>							
double	double	N/A	1 true	64	0	1	0
single	single	N/A	1 true	32	0	1	0
boolean	boolean	N/A	0 false	1	0	1	0

You cannot change the numerictype properties of a fi object after fi object creation.

**oct**

Stored integer value of a fi object in octal.

## fimath Object Properties

The properties associated with `fimath` objects are described in the following sections in alphabetical order.

### **CastBeforeSum**

Whether both operands are cast to the sum data type before addition. Possible values of this property are 1 (cast before sum) and 0 (do not cast before sum).

The default value of this property is 1 (true).

### **MaxProductWordLength**

Maximum allowable word length for the product data type.

The default value of this property is 128.

### **MaxSumWordLength**

Maximum allowable word length for the sum data type.

The default value of this property is 128.

### **OverflowMode**

Overflow-handling mode. The value of the `OverflowMode` property can be one of the following strings:

- `saturate` — Saturate to maximum or minimum value of the fixed-point range on overflow.
- `wrap` — Wrap on overflow. This mode is also known as two's complement overflow.

The default value of this property is `saturate`.

## ProductBias

Bias of the product data type. This value can be any floating-point number. The product data type defines the data type of the result of a multiplication of two `fi` objects.

The default value of this property is 0.

## ProductFixedExponent

Fixed exponent of the product data type. This value can be any positive or negative integer. The product data type defines the data type of the result of a multiplication of two `fi` objects.

$\text{ProductSlope} = \text{ProductSlopeAdjustmentFactor} * 2^{\text{ProductFixedExponent}}$   
Changing one of these properties changes the others.

The `ProductFixedExponent` is the negative of the `ProductFractionLength`. Changing one property changes the other.

The default value of this property is -30.

## ProductFractionLength

Fraction length, in bits, of the product data type. This value can be any positive or negative integer. The product data type defines the data type of the result of a multiplication of two `fi` objects.

The `ProductFractionLength` is the negative of the `ProductFixedExponent`. Changing one property changes the other.

The default value of this property is 30.

## ProductMode

Defines how the product data type is determined. In the following descriptions, let  $A$  and  $B$  be real operands, with [word length, fraction length] pairs  $[W_a F_a]$  and  $[W_b F_b]$ , respectively.  $W_p$  is the product data type word length and  $F_p$  is the product data type fraction length.

- **FullPrecision** — The full precision of the result is kept. An error is generated if the calculated word length is greater than `MaxProductWordLength`.

$$W_p = W_a + W_b$$

$$F_p = F_a + F_b$$

- **KeepLSB** — Keep least significant bits. You specify the product data type word length, while the fraction length is set to maintain the least significant bits of the product. In this mode, full precision is kept, but overflow is possible. This behavior models the C language integer operations.

$$W_p = \text{specified in the ProductWordLength property}$$

$$F_p = F_a + F_b$$

- **KeepMSB** — Keep most significant bits. You specify the product data type word length, while the fraction length is set to maintain the most significant bits of the product. In this mode, overflow is prevented, but precision may be lost.

$$W_p = \text{specified in the ProductWordLength property}$$

$$F_p = W_p - \text{integer length}$$

where

$$\text{integer length} = (W_a + W_b) - (F_a - F_b)$$

- **SpecifyPrecision** — You specify both the word length and fraction length of the product data type.

$$W_p = \text{specified in the ProductWordLength property}$$

$$F_p = \text{specified in the ProductFractionLength Property}$$

For [Slope Bias] math, you specify both the slope and bias of the product data type.

$S_p$  = specified in the ProductSlope property

$B_p$  = specified in the ProductBias property

[Slope Bias] math is only defined for products when ProductMode is set to SpecifyPrecision.

The default value of this property is FullPrecision.

## ProductSlope

Slope of the product data type. This value can be any floating-point number. The product data type defines the data type of the result of a multiplication of two `fi` objects.

$\text{ProductSlope} = \text{ProductSlopeAdjustmentFactor} * 2^{\text{ProductFixedExponent}}$   
Changing one of these properties changes the others.

The default value of this property is 9.3132e-010.

## ProductSlopeAdjustmentFactor

Slope adjustment factor of the product data type. This value can be any floating-point number greater than or equal to 1 and less than 2. The product data type defines the data type of the result of a multiplication of two `fi` objects.

$\text{ProductSlope} = \text{ProductSlopeAdjustmentFactor} * 2^{\text{ProductFixedExponent}}$   
Changing one of these properties changes the others.

The default value of this property is 1.

## ProductWordLength

Word length, in bits, of the product data type. This value must be a positive integer. The product data type defines the data type of the result of a multiplication of two `fi` objects.

The default value of this property is 32.

## RoundMode

The rounding mode. The value of the RoundMode property can be one of the following strings:

- `ceil` — Round toward positive infinity.
- `convergent` — Round to the closest representable integer. Ties round to the nearest even stored integer. This is the least biased rounding method provided by the Fixed-Point Toolbox.
- `fix` — Round toward zero.
- `floor` — Round toward negative infinity.
- `nearest` — Round toward nearest. Ties round toward positive infinity.
- `round` — Round toward nearest. Ties round toward negative infinity for negative numbers, and toward positive infinity for positive numbers.

The default value of this property is `nearest`.

## SumBias

The bias of the sum data type. This value can be any floating-point number. The sum data type defines the data type of the result of a sum of two `fi` objects.

The default value of this property is 0.

## SumFixedExponent

The fixed exponent of the sum data type. This value can be any positive or negative integer. The sum data type defines the data type of the result of a sum of two `fi` objects

$\text{SumSlope} = \text{SumSlopeAdjustmentFactor} * 2^{\text{SumFixedExponent}}$ .  
Changing one of these properties changes the others.

The `SumFixedExponent` is the negative of the `SumFractionLength`. Changing one property changes the other.

The default value of this property is -30.



## SumFractionLength

The fraction length, in bits, of the sum data type. This value can be any positive or negative integer. The sum data type defines the data type of the result of a sum of two `fi` objects.

The `SumFractionLength` is the negative of the `SumFixedExponent`. Changing one property changes the other.

The default value of this property is 30 .

## SumMode

Defines how the sum data type is determined. In the following descriptions, let  $A$  and  $B$  be real operands, with [word length, fraction length] pairs  $[W_a, F_a]$  and  $[W_b, F_b]$ , respectively.  $W_s$  is the sum data type word length and  $F_s$  is the sum data type fraction length.

---

**Note** In the case where there are two operands, as in  $A + B$ , `NumberOfSummands` is 2, and  $\text{ceil}(\log_2(\text{NumberOfSummands})) = 1$ . In `sum(A)` where  $A$  is a matrix, the `NumberOfSummands` is `size(A,1)`. In `sum(A)` where  $A$  is a vector, the `NumberOfSummands` is `length(A)`.

---

- `FullPrecision` — The full precision of the result is kept. An error is generated if the calculated word length is greater than `MaxSumWordLength`.

$$W_s = \text{integer length} + F_s$$

where

$$\text{integer length} = \max(W_a - F_a, W_b - F_b) + \text{ceil}(\log_2(\text{NumberOfSummands}))$$

$$F_s = \max(F_a, F_b)$$

- `KeepLSB` — Keep least significant bits. You specify the sum data type word length, while the fraction length is set to maintain the least significant bits of the sum. In this mode, full precision is kept, but overflow is possible. This behavior models the C language integer operations.

$W_s$  = specified in the `SumWordLength` property

$F_s = \max(F_a, F_b)$

- `KeepMSB` — Keep most significant bits. You specify the sum data type word length, while the fraction length is set to maintain the most significant bits of the sum and no more fractional bits than necessary. In this mode, overflow is prevented, but precision may be lost.

$W_s$  = specified in the `SumWordLength` property

$F_s = W_s - \text{integer length}$

where

$\text{integer length} = \max(W_a - F_a, W_b - F_b) + \text{ceil}(\log_2(\text{NumberOfSummands}))$

- `SpecifyPrecision` — You specify both the word length and fraction length of the sum data type.

$W_s$  = specified in the `SumWordLength` property

$F_s$  = specified in the `SumFractionLength` property

For [Slope Bias] math, you specify both the slope and bias of the sum data type.

$S_s$  = specified in the `SumSlope` property

$B_s$  = specified in the `SumBias` property

[Slope Bias] math is only defined for sums when `SumMode` is set to `SpecifyPrecision`.

The default value of this property is `FullPrecision`.

## SumSlope

The slope of the sum data type. This value can be any floating-point number. The sum data type defines the data type of the result of a sum of two `fi` objects.

$\text{SumSlope} = \text{SumSlopeAdjustmentFactor} * 2^{\text{SumFixedExponent}}$ .

Changing one of these properties changes the others.

The default value of this property is 9.3132e-010.

### **SumSlopeAdjustmentFactor**

The slope adjustment factor of the sum data type. This value can be any floating-point number greater than or equal to 1 and less than 2. The sum data type defines the data type of the result of a sum of two `fi` objects.

$\text{SumSlope} = \text{SumSlopeAdjustmentFactor} * 2^{\text{SumFixedExponent}}$ .  
Changing one of these properties changes the others.

The default value of this property is 1.

### **SumWordLength**

The word length, in bits, of the sum data type. This value must be a positive integer. The sum data type defines the data type of the result of a sum of two `fi` objects.

The default value of this property is 32.

## fipref Object Properties

The properties associated with `fipref` objects are described in the following sections in alphabetical order.

### **DataTypeOverride**

Data type override options for `fi` objects

- `ForceOff` — No data type override
- `ScaledDoubles` — Override with scaled doubles
- `TrueDoubles` — Override with doubles
- `True Singles` — Override with singles

Data type override only occurs when the `fi` constructor function is called.

The default value of this property is `ForceOff`.

### **FimathDisplay**

Display options for the `fimath` attributes of a `fi` object

- `full` — Displays all of the `fimath` attributes of a fixed-point object
- `none` — None of the `fimath` attributes are displayed

The default value of this property is `full`.

### **LoggingMode**

Logging options for operations performed on `fi` objects

- `off` — No logging
- `on` — Information is logged for future operations

Overflows and underflows for assignment, plus, minus, and multiplication operations are logged as warnings when `LoggingMode` is set to `on`.

When `LoggingMode` is on, you can also use the following functions to return logged information about assignment and creation operations to the MATLAB command line:

- `maxlog` — Returns the maximum real-world value
- `minlog` — Returns the minimum value
- `noverflows` — Returns the number of overflows
- `nunderflows` — Returns the number of underflows

`LoggingMode` must be set to on before you perform any operation in order to log information about it. To clear the log, use the function `resetlog`.

The default value of this property is `off`.

## NumericTypeDisplay

Display options for the `numerictype` attributes of a `fi` object

- `full` — Displays all the `numerictype` attributes of a fixed-point object
- `none` — None of the `numerictype` attributes are displayed.
- `short` — Displays an abbreviated notation of the fixed-point data type and scaling of a fixed-point object in the format `xWL,FL` where
  - `x` is `s` for signed and `u` for unsigned.
  - `WL` is the word length.
  - `FL` is the fraction length.

The default value of this property is `full`.

## NumberDisplay

Display options for the value of a `fi` object

- `bin` — Displays the stored integer value in binary format
- `dec` — Displays the stored integer value in unsigned decimal format

- `RealWorldValue` — Displays the stored integer value in the format specified by the MATLAB format function
- `hex` — Displays the stored integer value in hexadecimal format
- `int` — Displays the stored integer value in signed decimal format
- `none` — No value is displayed.

The default value of this property is `RealWorldValue`. In this mode, the value of a `fi` object is displayed in the format specified by the MATLAB format function: `+`, `bank`, `compact`, `hex`, `long`, `long e`, `long g`, `loose`, `rat`, `short`, `short e`, or `short g`. `fi` objects in `rat` format are displayed according to

$$1/(2^{\text{fixed-point exponent}}) \times \text{stored integer}$$

## numericType Object Properties

The properties associated with numericType objects are described in the following sections in alphabetical order.

### Bias

Bias associated with a fi object. The bias is part of the numerical representation used to interpret a fixed-point number. Along with the slope, the bias forms the scaling of the number. Fixed-point numbers can be represented as

$$\text{real-world value} = (\text{slope} \times \text{integer}) + \text{bias}$$

where the slope can be expressed as

$$\text{slope} = \text{fractional slope} \times 2^{\text{fixed exponent}}$$

### DataType

Data type associated with a fi object. The possible value of this property are

- boolean — Built-in MATLAB boolean data type
- double — Built-in MATLAB double data type
- Fixed — Fixed-point or integer data type
- ScaledDouble — Scaled double data type
- single — Built-in MATLAB single data type

The default value of this property is fixed.

### DataTypeMode

Data type and scaling associated with a fi object. The possible values of this property are

- boolean — Built-in boolean

- `double` — Built-in double
- Fixed-point: `binary point scaling` — Fixed-point data type and scaling defined by the word length and fraction length
- Fixed-point: `slope and bias scaling` — Fixed-point data type and scaling defined by the slope and bias
- Fixed-point: `unspecified scaling` — Fixed-point data type with unspecified scaling
- Scaled double: `binary point scaling` — Double data type with fixed-point word length and fraction length information retained
- Scaled double: `slope and bias scaling` — Double data type with fixed-point slope and bias information retained
- Scaled double: `unspecified scaling` — Double data type with unspecified fixed-point scaling
- `single` — Built-in single

The default value of this property is `Fixed-point: binary point scaling`.

## FixedExponent

Fixed-point exponent associated with a `fi` object. The exponent is part of the numerical representation used to express a fixed-point number. Fixed-point numbers can be represented as

$$\textit{real-world value} = (\textit{slope} \times \textit{integer}) + \textit{bias}$$

where the slope can be expressed as

$$\textit{slope} = \textit{fractional slope} \times 2^{\textit{fixed exponent}}$$

The exponent of a fixed-point number is equal to the negative of the fraction length:

$$\textit{fixed exponent} = -\textit{fraction length}$$



## FractionLength

Value of the `FractionLength` property is the fraction length of the stored integer value of a `fi` object, in bits. The fraction length can be any integer value. If you do not specify the fraction length of a `fi` object, it is set to the best possible precision.

This property is automatically set by default to the best precision possible based on the value of the word length.

## Scaling

Fixed-point scaling mode of a `fi` object. The possible values of this property are

- `BinaryPoint` — Scaling for the `fi` object is defined by the fraction length.
- `SlopeBias` — Scaling for the `fi` object is defined by the slope and bias.
- `Unspecified` — A temporary setting that is only allowed at `fi` object creation, in order to allow for the automatic assignment of a binary point best precision scaling.
- `Integer` — The `fi` object is an integer; the binary point is understood to be at the far right of the word, making the fraction length zero.

The default value of this property is `BinaryPoint`.

## Signed

Whether a `fi` object is signed. The possible values of this property are

- `1` — signed
- `0` — unsigned
- `true` — signed
- `false` — unsigned

The default value of this property is `true` .

## Slope

Slope associated with a `fi` object. The slope is part of the numerical representation used to express a fixed-point number. Along with the bias, the slope forms the scaling of a fixed-point number. Fixed-point numbers can be represented as

$$\text{real-world value} = (\text{slope} \times \text{integer}) + \text{bias}$$

where the slope can be expressed as

$$\text{slope} = \text{fractional slope} \times 2^{\text{fixed exponent}}$$

## SlopeAdjustmentFactor

Slope adjustment associated with a `fi` object. The slope adjustment is equivalent to the fractional slope of a fixed-point number. The fractional slope is part of the numerical representation used to express a fixed-point number. Fixed-point numbers can be represented as

$$\text{real-world value} = (\text{slope} \times \text{integer}) + \text{bias}$$

where the slope can be expressed as

$$\text{slope} = \text{fractional slope} \times 2^{\text{fixed exponent}}$$

## WordLength

Value of the `WordLength` property is the word length of the stored integer value of a fixed-point object, in bits. The word length can be any positive integer value.

The default value of this property is 16.

## quantizer Object Properties

The properties associated with quantizer objects are described in the following sections in alphabetical order.

### DataMode

Type of arithmetic used in quantization. This property can have the following values:

- `fixed` — Signed fixed-point calculations
- `float` — User-specified floating-point calculations
- `double` — Double-precision floating-point calculations
- `single` — Single-precision floating-point calculations
- `ufixed` — Unsigned fixed-point calculations

The default value of this property is `fixed`.

When you set the `DataMode` property value to `double` or `single`, the `Format` property value becomes read only.

### Format

Data format of a quantizer object. The interpretation of this property value depends on the value of the `DataMode` property.

For example, whether you specify the `DataMode` property with `fixed`- or floating-point arithmetic affects the interpretation of the data format property. For some `DataMode` property values, the data format property is read only.

The following table shows you how to interpret the values for the `Format` property value when you specify it, or how it is specified in read-only cases.

<b>DataMode Property Value</b>	<b>Interpreting the Format Property Values</b>
fixed or ufixed	<p>You specify the Format property value as a vector. The number of bits for the quantizer object word length is the first entry of this vector, and the number of bits for the quantizer object fraction length is the second entry.</p> <p>The word length can range from 2 to the limits of memory on your PC. The fraction length can range from 0 to one less than the word length.</p>
float	<p>You specify the Format property value as a vector. The number of bits you want for the quantizer object word length is the first entry of this vector, and the number of bits you want for the quantizer object exponent length is the second entry.</p> <p>The word length can range from 2 to the limits of memory on your PC. The exponent length can range from 0 to 11.</p>
double	<p>The Format property value is specified automatically (is read only) when you set the DataMode property to double. The value is [64 11], specifying the word length and exponent length, respectively.</p>
single	<p>The Format property value is specified automatically (is read only) when you set the DataMode property to single. The value is [32 8], specifying the word length and exponent length, respectively.</p>

## OverflowMode

Overflow-handling mode. The value of the OverflowMode property can be one of the following strings:

- saturate — Overflows saturate.

When the values of data to be quantized lie outside the range of the largest and smallest representable numbers (as specified by the data format properties), these values are quantized to the value of either the largest or smallest representable value, depending on which is closest.

- wrap — Overflows wrap to the range of representable values.

When the values of data to be quantized lie outside the range of the largest and smallest representable numbers (as specified by the data format

properties), these values are wrapped back into that range using modular arithmetic relative to the smallest representable number.

The default value of this property is `saturate`.

---

**Note** Floating-point numbers that extend beyond the dynamic range overflow to `±inf`.

---

The `OverflowMode` property value is set to `saturate` and becomes a read-only property when you set the value of the `DataMode` property to `float`, `double`, or `single`.

## RoundMode

Rounding mode. The value of the `RoundMode` property can be one of the following strings:

- `ceil` — Round up to the next allowable quantized value.
- `convergent` — Round to the nearest allowable quantized value. Numbers that are exactly halfway between the two nearest allowable quantized values are rounded up only if the least significant bit (after rounding) would be set to 0.
- `fix` — Round negative numbers up and positive numbers down to the next allowable quantized value.
- `floor` — Round down to the next allowable quantized value.
- `nearest` — Round to the nearest allowable quantized value. Numbers that are halfway between the two nearest allowable quantized values are rounded up.

The default value of this property is `floor`.



# Functions — By Category

---

Bitwise Functions (p. 10-2)	Operate on and manipulate bits
Constructor and Property Functions (p. 10-2)	Create and manipulate objects and properties
Data Manipulation Functions (p. 10-3)	Manipulate and get information about objects
Data Type Functions (p. 10-5)	Convert objects or values to different data types
Data Quantizing Functions (p. 10-5)	Quantize data
Element-Wise Logical Operator Functions (p. 10-6)	Get information about array elements
Math Operation Functions (p. 10-6)	Operate on objects
Matrix Manipulation Functions (p. 10-7)	Manipulate and get information about arrays
Plotting Functions (p. 10-9)	Create plots
Radix Conversion Functions (p. 10-12)	Binary point representations and conversions
Relational Operator Functions (p. 10-13)	Compare real-world values of objects
Statistics Functions (p. 10-13)	Get statistical information about objects
Subscripted Assignment and Reference Functions (p. 10-14)	Get and set array elements
fi Object Functions (p. 10-15)	All functions that operate directly on fi objects

fimath Object Functions (p. 10-17)	All functions that operate directly on fimath objects
fipref Object Functions (p. 10-18)	All functions that operate directly on fipref objects
numericity Object Functions (p. 10-19)	All functions that operate directly on numericity objects
quantizer Object Functions (p. 10-20)	All functions that operate directly on quantizer objects

## Bitwise Functions

bitand	Bitwise AND of two fi objects
bitcmp	Bitwise complement of fi object
bitget	Bit at certain position
bitor	Bitwise OR of two fi objects
bitset	Set bit at certain position
bitshift	Shift bits specified number of places
bitxor	Bitwise exclusive OR of two fi objects

## Constructor and Property Functions

copyobj	Make independent copy of quantizer object
fi	Construct fi object
fimath	Construct fimath object
fipref	Construct fipref object
get	Property values of quantizer object



<code>inspect</code>	Property Inspector
<code>numericity</code>	Construct <code>numericity</code> object
<code>quantizer</code>	Construct <code>quantizer</code> object
<code>reset</code>	Reset objects to initial conditions
<code>savefipref</code>	Save <code>fi</code> preferences for next MATLAB session
<code>set</code>	Set or display property values for <code>quantizer</code> objects
<code>stripscaling</code>	Stored integer of <code>fi</code> object
<code>tostring</code>	Convert <code>quantizer</code> object to string

## Data Manipulation Functions

<code>denormalmax</code>	Largest denormalized quantized number for <code>quantizer</code> object
<code>denormalmin</code>	Smallest denormalized quantized number for <code>quantizer</code> object
<code>eps</code>	Quantized relative accuracy for <code>fi</code> or <code>quantizer</code> objects
<code>exponentbias</code>	Exponent bias for <code>quantizer</code> object
<code>exponentlength</code>	Exponent length of <code>quantizer</code> object
<code>exponentmax</code>	Maximum exponent for <code>quantizer</code> object
<code>exponentmin</code>	Minimum exponent for <code>quantizer</code> object
<code>fractionlength</code>	Fraction length of <code>quantizer</code> object
<code>intmax</code>	Largest positive stored integer value representable by <code>numericity</code> of <code>fi</code> object

<code>intmin</code>	Smallest stored integer value representable by <code>numerictype</code> of <code>fi</code> object
<code>isequal</code>	Determine whether real-world values of two <code>fi</code> objects are equal, or determine whether properties of two <code>fi</code> objects are equal
<code>isfi</code>	Determine whether variable is <code>fi</code> object
<code>isfimath</code>	Determine whether variable is <code>fi</code> object
<code>isnumerictype</code>	Determine whether variable is <code>numerictype</code> object
<code>ispropequal</code>	Determine whether properties of two <code>fi</code> objects are equal
<code>issigned</code>	Determine whether <code>fi</code> object is signed
<code>lowerbound</code>	Lower bound of range of <code>fi</code> object
<code>lsb</code>	Scaling of least significant bit of <code>fi</code> object
<code>range</code>	Numerical range of <code>fi</code> or quantizer object
<code>realmax</code>	Largest positive fixed-point value or quantized number
<code>realmin</code>	Smallest positive normalized fixed-point value or quantized number
<code>rescale</code>	Change scaling of <code>fi</code> object
<code>upperbound</code>	Upper bound of range of <code>fi</code> object
<code>wordlength</code>	Word length of quantizer object

## Data Type Functions

<code>double</code>	Double-precision floating-point real-world value of <code>f i</code> object
<code>int</code>	Smallest built-in integer in which stored integer value of <code>f i</code> object will fit
<code>int16</code>	Stored integer value of <code>f i</code> object as built-in <code>int16</code>
<code>int32</code>	Stored integer value of <code>f i</code> object as built-in <code>int32</code>
<code>int8</code>	Stored integer value of <code>f i</code> object as built-in <code>int8</code>
<code>logical</code>	Convert numeric values to logical
<code>single</code>	Single-precision floating-point real-world value of <code>f i</code> object
<code>uint16</code>	Stored integer value of <code>f i</code> object as built-in <code>uint16</code>
<code>uint32</code>	Stored integer value of <code>f i</code> object as built-in <code>uint32</code>
<code>uint8</code>	Stored integer value of <code>f i</code> object as built-in <code>uint8</code>

## Data Quantizing Functions

<code>convergent</code>	Apply convergent rounding
<code>quantize</code>	Apply quantizer object to data

randquant	Generate uniformly distributed, quantized random number using quantizer object
round	Round input data using quantizer object without checking for overflow

## Element-Wise Logical Operator Functions

all	Determine whether all array elements are nonzero
and	Find logical AND of array or scalar inputs
any	Determine whether any array elements are nonzero
not	Find logical NOT of array or scalar input
or	Find logical OR of array or scalar inputs

## Math Operation Functions

abs	Absolute value of <code>fi</code> object
add	Add two objects using <code>fi</code> object
complex	Construct complex <code>fi</code> object from real and imaginary parts
conj	Complex conjugate of <code>fi</code> object
divide	Divide two objects
imag	Imaginary part of complex number

<code>innerprodintbits</code>	Number of integer bits needed for fixed-point inner product
<code>minus</code>	Matrix difference between <code>fi</code> objects
<code>mpy</code>	Multiply two objects using <code>fimath</code> object
<code>mtimes</code>	Matrix product of <code>fi</code> objects
<code>plus</code>	Matrix sum of <code>fi</code> objects
<code>pow2</code>	Multiply by a power of 2
<code>real</code>	Real part of complex number
<code>sign</code>	Perform signum function on array
<code>sub</code>	Subtract two objects using <code>fimath</code> object
<code>sum</code>	Sum of array elements
<code>times</code>	Element-by-element multiplication of <code>fi</code> objects
<code>uminus</code>	Negate elements of <code>fi</code> object array
<code>uplus</code>	Unary plus

## Matrix Manipulation Functions

<code>buffer</code>	Buffer signal vector into matrix of data frames
<code>ctranspose</code>	Complex conjugate transpose of <code>fi</code> object
<code>diag</code>	Diagonal matrices or diagonals of matrix
<code>disp</code>	Display object
<code>end</code>	Last index of array
<code>hankel</code>	Hankel matrix

<code>horzcat</code>	Horizontally concatenate multiple <code>fi</code> objects
<code>ipermute</code>	Inverse permute dimensions of multidimensional array
<code>iscolumn</code>	Determine whether <code>fi</code> object is column vector
<code>isempty</code>	Determine whether array is empty
<code>isfinite</code>	Determine whether array elements are finite
<code>isinf</code>	Determine whether array elements are infinite
<code>isnan</code>	Determine whether array elements are NaN
<code>isnumeric</code>	Determine whether input is numeric array
<code>isobject</code>	Determine whether input is MATLAB OOPS object
<code>isreal</code>	Determine whether array elements are real
<code>isrow</code>	Determine whether <code>fi</code> object is row vector
<code>isscalar</code>	Determine whether input is scalar
<code>isvector</code>	Determine whether input is vector
<code>length</code>	Vector length
<code>ndims</code>	Number of array dimensions
<code>permute</code>	Rearrange dimensions of multidimensional array
<code>repmat</code>	Replicate and tile array
<code>reshape</code>	Reshape array
<code>size</code>	Array dimensions
<code>squeeze</code>	Remove singleton dimensions

toeplitz	Create Toeplitz matrix
transpose	Transpose operation
tril	Lower triangular part of matrix
vertcat	Vertically concatenate multiple <code>i</code> objects

## Plotting Functions

area	Create filled area 2-D plot
bar	Create vertical bar graph
barh	Create horizontal bar graph
clabel	Create contour plot elevation labels
comet	Create 2-D comet plot
comet3	Create 3-D comet plot
compass	Plot arrows emanating from origin
coneplot	Plot velocity vectors as cones in 3-D vector field
contour	Create contour graph of matrix
contour3	Create 3-D contour plot
contourc	Create two-level contour plot computation
contourf	Create filled 2-D contour plot
errorbar	Plot error bars along curve
etreeplot	Plot elimination tree
ezcontour	Easy-to-use contour plotter
ezcontourf	Easy-to-use filled contour plotter
ezmesh	Easy-to-use 3-D mesh plotter
ezplot	Easy-to-use function plotter

<code>ezplot3</code>	Easy-to-use 3-D parametric curve plotter
<code>ezpolar</code>	Easy-to-use polar coordinate plotter
<code>ezsurf</code>	Easy-to-use 3-D colored surface plotter
<code>ezsurfc</code>	Easy-to-use combination surface/contour plotter
<code>feather</code>	Plot velocity vectors
<code>fplot</code>	Plot function between specified limits
<code>gplot</code>	Plot set of nodes using adjacency matrix
<code>hist</code>	Create histogram plot
<code>histc</code>	Histogram count
<code>line</code>	Create line object
<code>loglog</code>	Create log-log scale plot
<code>mesh</code>	Create mesh plot
<code>meshc</code>	Create mesh plot with contour plot
<code>meshz</code>	Create mesh plot with curtain plot
<code>patch</code>	Create patch graphics object
<code>pcolor</code>	Create pseudocolor plot
<code>plot</code>	Create linear 2-D plot
<code>plot3</code>	Create 3-D line plot
<code>plotmatrix</code>	Draw scatter plots
<code>plotyy</code>	Create graph with y-axes on right and left sides
<code>polar</code>	Plot polar coordinates
<code>quiver</code>	Create quiver or velocity plot
<code>quiver3</code>	Create 3-D quiver or velocity plot



<code>rgbplot</code>	Plot colormap
<code>ribbon</code>	Create ribbon plot
<code>rose</code>	Create angle histogram
<code>scatter</code>	Create scatter or bubble plot
<code>scatter3</code>	Create 3-D scatter or bubble plot
<code>semilogx</code>	Create semilogarithmic plot with logarithmic x-axis
<code>semilogy</code>	Create semilogarithmic plot with logarithmic y-axis
<code>slice</code>	Create volumetric slice plot
<code>spy</code>	Visualize sparsity pattern
<code>stairs</code>	Create stairstep graph
<code>stem</code>	Plot discrete sequence data
<code>stem3</code>	Plot 3-D discrete sequence data
<code>streamribbon</code>	Create 3-D stream ribbon plot
<code>streamslice</code>	Draw streamlines in slice planes
<code>streamtube</code>	Create 3-D stream tube plot
<code>surf</code>	Create 3-D shaded surface plot
<code>surfc</code>	Create 3-D shaded surface plot with contour plot
<code>surf1</code>	Create surface plot with colormap-based lighting
<code>surfnorm</code>	Compute and display 3-D surface normals
<code>text</code>	Create text object in current axes
<code>treeplot</code>	Plot picture of tree
<code>trimesh</code>	Create triangular mesh plot
<code>triplot</code>	Create 2-D triangular plot
<code>trisurf</code>	Create triangular surface plot

<code>triu</code>	Upper triangular part of matrix
<code>voronoi</code>	Create Voronoi diagram
<code>voronoin</code>	Create n-D Voronoi diagram
<code>waterfall</code>	Create waterfall plot
<code>xlim</code>	Set or query x-axis limits
<code>ylim</code>	Set or query y-axis limits

## Radix Conversion Functions

<code>bin</code>	Binary representation of stored integer of <code>fi</code> object
<code>bin2num</code>	Convert two's complement binary string to number using quantizer object
<code>dec</code>	Unsigned decimal representation of stored integer of <code>fi</code> object
<code>hex</code>	Hexadecimal representation of stored integer of <code>fi</code> object
<code>hex2num</code>	Convert hexadecimal string to number using quantizer object
<code>num2bin</code>	Convert number to binary string using quantizer object
<code>num2hex</code>	Convert number to hexadecimal equivalent using quantizer object
<code>num2int</code>	Convert number to signed integer
<code>oct</code>	Octal representation of stored integer of <code>fi</code> object
<code>sdec</code>	Signed decimal representation of stored integer of <code>fi</code> object

## Relational Operator Functions

eq	Determine whether real-world values of two <code>f i</code> objects are equal
ge	Determine whether real-world value of one <code>f i</code> object is greater than or equal to another
gt	Determine whether real-world value of one <code>f i</code> object is greater than another
le	Determine whether real-world value of <code>f i</code> object is less than or equal to another
lt	Determine whether real-world value of one <code>f i</code> object is less than another
ne	Determine whether real-world values of two <code>f i</code> objects are not equal

## Statistics Functions

max	Largest element in array of <code>f i</code> objects
maxlog	Largest real-world value of <code>f i</code> object or maximum value of quantizer object before quantization
min	Smallest element in array of <code>f i</code> objects
minlog	Smallest real-world value of <code>f i</code> object or minimum value of quantizer object before quantization
noperations	Number of operations
noverflows	Number of overflows

numberofelements

Number of data elements in `fi` array

nunderflows

Number of underflows

resetlog

Clear log for `fi` or quantizer object

## **Subscripted Assignment and Reference Functions**

subsasgn

Subscripted assignment

subsref

Subscripted reference

## fi Object Functions

abs	all	and	any	area
bar	barh	bin	bitand	bitcmp
bitget	bitor	bitshift	bitxor	buffer
clabel	comet	comet3	compass	complex
coneplot	conj	contour	contour3	contourc
contourf	ctranspose	dec	diag	double
end	eps	eq	errorbar	etreeplot
ezcontour	ezcontourf	ezmesh	ezplot	ezplot3
ezpolar	ezsurf	ezsurfz	feather	fi
fimath	fplot	ge	get	gplot
gt	hankel	hex	hist	histc
horzcat	imag	innerprodintbits	inspect	int
int8	int16	int32	intmax	intmin
ipermute	iscolumn	isempty	isequal	isfi
isfinite	isinf	isnan	isnumeric	isobject
ispropequal	isreal	isrow	isscalar	assigned
isvector	le	length	line	logical
lowerbound	lsb	lt	max	mesh
meshc	meshz	min	minus	mtimes
ndims	ne	not	numberofelements	numerictype
oct	or	patch	pcolor	permute
plot	plot3	plotmatrix	plotyy	plus
polar	pow2	quantizer	quiver	quiver3
range	real	realmax	realmin	repmat
rescale	reshape	rgbplot	ribbon	rose
scatter	scatter3	sdec	sign	single

size	slice	spy	stairs	stem
stem3	streamribbon	streamslice	streamtube	stripscaling
subsasgn	subsref	sum	surf	surfc
surf1	surfnorm	text	times	toeplitz
transpose	treeplot	tril	trimesh	triplot
trisurf	triu	uint8	uint16	uint32
uminus	uplus	upperbound	vertcat	voronoi
voronoin	waterfall	xlim	ylim	zlim

## **fimath Object Functions**

- add
- disp
- fimath
- isequal
- isfimath
- mpy
- sub

## **fipref Object Functions**

- disp
- fipref
- reset
- savefipref



## **numerictype Object Functions**

- divide
- isequal
- isnumerictype

## quantizer Object Functions

bin2num	copyobj	denormalmax	denormalmin	disp
eps	exponentbias	exponentlength	exponentmax	exponentmin
fractionlength	get	hex2num	isequal	length
max	min	noperations	noverflows	num2bin
num2hex	num2int	nunderflows	quantize	quantizer
randquant	range	realmax	realmin	reset
round	set	tostring	wordlength	

# Functions — Alphabetical List

---

# abs

---

**Purpose** Absolute value of `fi` object

**Syntax** `abs(a)`

**Description** `abs(a)` returns the absolute value of `fi` object `a`.

When the object `a` is real and has a signed data type, the absolute value of the most negative value is problematic since it is not representable. In this case, the absolute value saturates to the most positive value representable by the data type if the `OverflowMode` property is set to `saturate`. If `OverflowMode` is `wrap`, the absolute value of the most negative value has no effect.

`abs` does not support complex inputs.

## Examples

The following example shows the difference between the absolute value results for the most negative value representable by a signed data type when `OverflowMode` is `saturate` or `wrap`.

```
P = fipref('NumericTypeDisplay','full','FimathDisplay','full');  
a = fi(-128)
```

```
a =
```

```
-128
```

```
      DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: binary point scaling  
             Signed: true  
      WordLength: 16  
      FractionLength: 8
```

```
      RoundMode: nearest  
      OverflowMode: saturate  
      ProductMode: FullPrecision  
MaxProductWordLength: 128  
      SumMode: FullPrecision  
MaxSumWordLength: 128  
      CastBeforeSum: true
```

```
abs(a)
ans =
    127.9961
        DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: binary point scaling
            Signed: true
            WordLength: 16
            FractionLength: 8
            RoundMode: nearest
            OverflowMode: saturate
            ProductMode: FullPrecision
MaxProductWordLength: 128
            SumMode: FullPrecision
            MaxSumWordLength: 128
            CastBeforeSum: true
a.OverflowMode = 'wrap'
a =
    -128
        DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: binary point scaling
            Signed: true
            WordLength: 16
            FractionLength: 8
            RoundMode: nearest
            OverflowMode: wrap
            ProductMode: FullPrecision
MaxProductWordLength: 128
            SumMode: FullPrecision
            MaxSumWordLength: 128
```

# abs

---

```
CastBeforeSum: true

abs(a)

ans =

-128

DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: binary point scaling
Signed: true
WordLength: 16
FractionLength: 8

RoundMode: nearest
OverflowMode: wrap
ProductMode: FullPrecision
MaxProductWordLength: 128
SumMode: FullPrecision
MaxSumWordLength: 128
CastBeforeSum: true
```

**Purpose**

Add two objects using `fimath` object

**Syntax**

```
c = F.add(a,b)
```

**Description**

`c = F.add(a,b)` adds objects `a` and `b` using `fimath` object `F`. This is helpful in cases when you want to override the `fimath` objects of `a` and `b`, or if the `fimath` objects of `a` and `b` are different.

`a` and `b` must have the same dimensions unless one is a scalar. If either `a` or `b` is scalar, then `c` has the dimensions of the nonscalar object.

If either `a` or `b` is a `fi` object, and the other is a MATLAB built-in numeric type, then the built-in object is cast to the word length of the `fi` object, preserving best-precision fraction length.

**Examples**

In this example, `c` is the 32-bit sum of `a` and `b` with fraction length 16:

```
a = fi(pi);
b = fi(exp(1));
F = fimath('SumMode','SpecifyPrecision','SumWordLength',
          32,'SumFractionLength',16);
c = F.add(a,b)
```

```
c =
```

```
5.8599
```

```
DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: binary point scaling
Signed: true
WordLength: 32
FractionLength: 16
```

```
RoundMode: nearest
OverflowMode: saturate
ProductMode: FullPrecision
MaxProductWordLength: 128
SumMode: SpecifyPrecision
```

# add

---

```
SumWordLength: 32
SumFractionLength: 16
CastBeforeSum: true
```

## Algorithm

`c = F.add(a,b)` is equivalent to

```
a.fimath = F;
b.fimath = F;
c = a + b;
```

except that the `fimath` properties of `a` and `b` are not modified when you use the functional form.

## See Also

`divide`, `fi`, `fimath`, `mpy`, `numericType`, `sub`, `sum`



**Purpose** Determine whether all array elements are nonzero

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB `all` reference page for more information.

# and

---

**Purpose** Find logical AND of array or scalar inputs

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB and reference page for more information.

**Purpose** Determine whether any array elements are nonzero

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB `any` reference page for more information.

## area

---

**Purpose** Create filled area 2-D plot

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB area reference page for more information.

**Purpose** Create vertical bar graph

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB `bar` reference page for more information.

# barh

---

**Purpose** Create horizontal bar graph

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB `barh` reference page for more information.

**Purpose** Binary representation of stored integer of `fi` object

**Syntax** `bin(a)`

**Description** Fixed-point numbers can be represented as

$$\text{real-world value} = 2^{-\text{fraction length}} \times \text{stored integer}$$

or, equivalently,

$$\text{real-world value} = (\text{slope} \times \text{stored integer}) + \text{bias}$$

The stored integer is the raw binary number, in which the binary point is assumed to be at the far right of the word.

`bin(a)` returns the stored integer of `fi` object `a` in unsigned binary format as a string.

**Examples** The following code

```
a = fi([-1 1],1,8,7);  
bin(a)
```

returns

```
10000000    01111111
```

**See Also** `dec`, `hex`, `int`, `oct`

# bin2num

---

**Purpose** Convert two's complement binary string to number using quantizer object

**Syntax** `y = bin2num(q,b)`

**Description** `y = bin2num(q,b)` uses the properties of quantizer object `q` to convert binary string `b` to numeric array `y`. When `b` is a cell array containing binary strings, `y` is a cell array of the same dimension containing numeric arrays. The fixed-point binary representation is two's complement. The floating-point binary representation is in IEEE Standard 754 style.

`bin2num` and `num2bin` are inverses of one another. Note that `num2bin` always returns the strings in a column.

**Examples** Create a quantizer object and an array of numeric strings. Convert the numeric strings to binary strings, then use `bin2num` to convert them back to numeric strings.

```
q=quantizer([4 3]);  
[a,b]=range(q);  
x=(b:-eps(q):a)';  
b = num2bin(q,x)
```

```
b =
```

```
0111  
0110  
0101  
0100  
0011  
0010  
0001  
0000  
1111  
1110  
1101
```



```
1100
1011
1010
1001
1000
```

bin2num performs the inverse operation of num2bin.

```
y=bin2num(q,b)
```

```
y =
```

```
0.8750
0.7500
0.6250
0.5000
0.3750
0.2500
0.1250
0
-0.1250
-0.2500
-0.3750
-0.5000
-0.6250
-0.7500
-0.8750
-1.0000
```

## See Also

hex2num, num2bin, num2hex, num2int

# bitand

---

**Purpose** Bitwise AND of two `fi` objects

**Syntax** `c = bitand(a, b)`

**Description** `c = bitand(a, b)` returns the bitwise AND of `fi` objects `a` and `b`.  
The `fi`math and the `numeric`type objects of `a` and `b` must be identical. If the `numeric`type is signed, then the bit representation of the stored integer is in two's complement representation.  
`a` and `b` must have the same dimensions unless one is a scalar.  
`bitand` only supports `fi` objects with fixed-point data types.

**See Also** `bitcmp`, `bitget`, `bitor`, `bitset`, `bitxor`

**Purpose** Bitwise complement of `fi` object

**Syntax** `c = bitcmp(a)`

**Description** `c = bitcmp(a)` returns the bitwise complement of `fi` object `a` as an `n`-bit nonnegative integer. If `a` has a signed `numericType`, then the bit representation of the stored integer is in two's complement representation.

`bitcmp` only supports `fi` objects with fixed-point data types.

**See Also** `bitand`, `bitget`, `bitor`, `bitset`, `bitxor`

# bitget

---

**Purpose** Bit at certain position

**Syntax** `c = bitget(a, bit)`

**Description** `c = bitget(a, bit)` returns the value of the bit at position `bit` in `a`. `a` must be a nonnegative integer, and `bit` must be a number between 1 and the number of bits in the floating-point integer representation of `a`. If `a` has a signed numeric type, then the bit representation of the stored integer is in two's complement representation.

`bitget` only supports `fi` objects with fixed-point data types.

**See Also** `bitand`, `bitcmp`, `bitor`, `bitset`, `bitxor`

**Purpose** Bitwise OR of two `fi` objects

**Syntax** `c = bitor(a, b)`

**Description** `c = bitor(a, b)` returns the bitwise OR of `fi` objects `a` and `b`.  
The `fi`math and the `numericType` objects of `a` and `b` must be identical. If the `numericType` is signed, then the bit representation of the stored integer is in two's complement representation.

`a` and `b` must have the same dimensions unless one is a scalar.

`bitor` only supports `fi` objects with fixed-point data types.

**See Also** `bitand`, `bitcmp`, `bitget`, `bitset`, `bitxor`

# bitset

---

**Purpose** Set bit at certain position

**Syntax** `c = bitset(a, bit)`  
`c = bitset(a, bit, v)`

**Description** `c = bitset(a, bit)` sets bit position `bit` in `a` to 1 (on).  
`c = bitset(a, bit, v)` sets bit position `bit` in `a` to `v`. `v` must be 0 (off) or 1 (on). Any value `v` other than 0 is automatically set to 1.  
`a` must be a nonnegative integer, and `bit` must be a number between 1 and the number of bits in the floating-point integer representation of `a`. If `a` has a signed numeric type, then the bit representation of the stored integer is in two's complement representation.  
`bitset` only supports `fi` objects with fixed-point data types.

**See Also** `bitand`, `bitcmp`, `bitget`, `bitor`, `bitxor`

**Purpose**

Shift bits specified number of places

**Syntax**

```
c = bitshift(a, k)
```

**Description**

`c = bitshift(a, k)` returns the value of `a` shifted by `k` bits.

fi object `a` can be any fixed-point numeric type. The `OverflowMode` and `RoundMode` properties are obeyed.

`bitshift` only supports fi objects with fixed-point data types.

**Example**

This example highlights how changing the `OverflowMode` property of the `fi` object can change the results returned by the `bitshift` function. Consider the following signed fixed-point fi object with a value of 3, word length 16, and fraction length 0:

```
a = fi(3,1,16,0);
```

By default, the `OverflowMode` `fi` object property is `saturate`. When `a` is shifted such that it overflows, it is saturated to the maximum possible value:

```
for k=0:16,b=bitshift(a,k);...
    disp([num2str(k,'%02d'),' ' ,bin(b)]);end
```

```
00. 0000000000000011
01. 0000000000000110
02. 0000000000001100
03. 0000000000011000
04. 000000000110000
05. 000000001100000
06. 000000011000000
07. 000000110000000
08. 000001100000000
09. 000011000000000
10. 000110000000000
11. 001100000000000
12. 001100000000000
```

# bitshift

---

```
13. 0110000000000000
14. 0111111111111111
15. 0111111111111111
16. 0111111111111111
```

Now change OverflowMode to wrap. In this case, most significant bits shift off the “top” of a until the value is zero:

```
a = fi(3,1,16,0,'OverflowMode','wrap');
for k=0:16,b=bitshift(a,k);...
disp([num2str(k,'%02d'),' ',bin(b)]);end
```

```
00. 0000000000000011
01. 0000000000000110
02. 0000000000001100
03. 0000000000011000
04. 0000000000110000
05. 0000000001100000
06. 0000000011000000
07. 0000000110000000
08. 0000001100000000
09. 0000011000000000
10. 0000110000000000
11. 0001100000000000
12. 0011000000000000
13. 0110000000000000
14. 1100000000000000
15. 1000000000000000
16. 0000000000000000
```

## See Also

bitand, bitcmp, bitget, bitor, bitset, bitxor



- Purpose** Bitwise exclusive OR of two `fi` objects
- Syntax** `c = bitxor(a, b)`
- Description** `c = bitxor(a, b)` returns the bitwise exclusive OR of `fi` objects `a` and `b`.
- The `fi`math and the `numeric`type objects of `a` and `b` must be identical. If the `numeric`type is signed, then the bit representation of the stored integer is in two's complement representation.
- `a` and `b` must have the same dimensions unless one is a scalar.
- `bitxor` only supports `fi` objects with fixed-point data types.
- See Also** `bitand`, `bitcmp`, `bitget`, `bitor`, `bitset`

# buffer

---

**Purpose** Buffer signal vector into matrix of data frames

**Description** Refer to the Signal Processing Toolbox `buffer` reference page for more information.

**Purpose** Create contour plot elevation labels

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB `clabel` reference page for more information.

## comet

---

**Purpose** Create 2-D comet plot

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB comet reference page for more information.

**Purpose** Create 3-D comet plot

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB `comet3` reference page for more information.

# compass

---

**Purpose** Plot arrows emanating from origin

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB compass reference page for more information.

<b>Purpose</b>	Construct complex <code>fi</code> object from real and imaginary parts
<b>Syntax</b>	<code>c = complex(a,b)</code> <code>c = complex(a)</code>
<b>Description</b>	<p>The <code>complex</code> function constructs a complex <code>fi</code> object from real and imaginary parts.</p> <p><code>c = complex(a,b)</code> returns the complex result <math>a + bi</math>, where <code>a</code> and <code>b</code> are identically sized real N-D arrays, matrices, or scalars of the same data type. When <code>b</code> is all zero, <code>c</code> is complex with an all-zero imaginary part. This is in contrast to the addition of <math>a + 0i</math>, which returns a strictly real result.</p> <p><code>c = complex(a)</code> for a real <code>fi</code> object <code>a</code> returns the complex result <math>a + bi</math> with real part <code>a</code> and an all-zero imaginary part. Even though its imaginary part is all zero, <code>c</code> is complex.</p> <p>The <code>numerictype</code> and <code>fimath</code> objects of the leftmost input that is a <code>fi</code> object are applied to the output <code>c</code>.</p>
<b>See Also</b>	<code>imag</code> , <code>real</code>

# coneplot

---

**Purpose** Plot velocity vectors as cones in 3-D vector field

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB coneplot reference page for more information.



---

**Purpose** Complex conjugate of fi object

**Syntax** `conj(a)`

**Description** `conj(a)` is the complex conjugate of fi object `a`.  
When `a` is complex,

$$\text{conj}(a) = \text{real}(a) - i \times \text{imag}(a)$$

The `numericType` and `fiMath` objects of the input `a` are applied to the output.

**See Also** `complex`, `imag`, `real`

# contour

---

**Purpose** Create contour graph of matrix

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB contour reference page for more information.

**Purpose** Create 3-D contour plot

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB contour3 reference page for more information.

## contourc

---

**Purpose** Create two-level contour plot computation

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB contourc reference page for more information.

**Purpose** Create filled 2-D contour plot

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB contourf reference page for more information.

# convergent

---

**Purpose** Apply convergent rounding

**Syntax** `convergent(x)`

**Description** `convergent(x)` rounds the elements of `x` to the nearest integer, except in a tie, then rounds to the nearest even integer.

**Examples** MATLAB `round` and `convergent` differ in the way they treat values whose fractional part is 0.5. In `round`, every tie is rounded up in absolute value. `convergent` rounds ties to the nearest even integer.

```
x=[-3.5:3.5]';  
[x convergent(x) round(x)]  
ans =  
  
-3.5000 -4.0000 -4.0000  
-2.5000 -2.0000 -3.0000  
-1.5000 -2.0000 -2.0000  
-0.5000 0 -1.0000  
0.5000 0 1.0000  
1.5000 2.0000 2.0000  
2.5000 2.0000 3.0000  
3.5000 4.0000 4.0000
```

**Purpose** Make independent copy of quantizer object

**Syntax** `q1 = copyobj(q)`  
`[q1,q2,...] = copyobj(obja,objb,...)`

**Description** `q1 = copyobj(q)` makes a copy of quantizer object `q` and returns it in `q1`.

`[q1,q2,...] = copyobj(obja,objb,...)` copies `obja` into `q1`, `objb` into `q2`, and so on.

Using `copyobj` to copy a quantizer object is not the same as using the command syntax `q1 = q` to copy a quantizer object. quantizer objects have memory (their read-only properties). When you use `copyobj`, the resulting copy is independent of the original item; it does not share the original object's memory, such as the values of the properties `min`, `max`, `noverflows`, or `noperations`. Using `q1 = q` creates a new object that is an alias for the original and shares the original object's memory, and thus its property values.

**Examples** `q = quantizer('CoefficientFormat',[8 7]);`  
`q1 = copyobj(q);`

**See Also** `quantizer`, `get`, `set`

# ctranspose

---

<b>Purpose</b>	Complex conjugate transpose of <code>fi</code> object
<b>Syntax</b>	<code>ctranspose(a)</code>
<b>Description</b>	<code>ctranspose(a)</code> returns the complex conjugate transpose of <code>fi</code> object <code>a</code> . It is also called for the syntax <code>a'</code> .
<b>See Also</b>	<code>transpose</code>



**Purpose** Unsigned decimal representation of stored integer of `fi` object

**Syntax** `dec(a)`

**Description** Fixed-point numbers can be represented as

$$\text{real-world value} = 2^{-\text{fraction length}} \times \text{stored integer}$$

or, equivalently,

$$\text{real-world value} = (\text{slope} \times \text{stored integer}) + \text{bias}$$

The stored integer is the raw binary number, in which the binary point is assumed to be at the far right of the word.

`dec(a)` returns the stored integer of `fi` object `a` in unsigned decimal format as a string.

**Examples** The code

```
a = fi([-1 1],1,8,7);  
dec(a)
```

returns

```
128    127
```

**See Also** `bin`, `hex`, `int`, `oct`, `sdec`

# denormalmax

---

**Purpose** Largest denormalized quantized number for quantizer object

**Syntax** `x = denormalmax(q)`

**Description** `x = denormalmax(q)` is the largest positive denormalized quantized number where `q` is a quantizer object. Anything larger than `x` is a normalized number. Denormalized numbers apply only to floating-point format. When `q` represents fixed-point numbers, this function returns `eps(q)`.

**Examples**

```
q = quantizer('float',[6 3]);
x = denormalmax(q)

x =

    0.1875
```

**Algorithm** When `q` is a floating-point quantizer object,

$$\text{denormalmax}(q) = \text{realmin}(q) - \text{denormalmin}(q)$$

When `q` is a fixed-point quantizer object,

$$\text{denormalmax}(q) = \text{eps}(q)$$

**See Also** `denormalmin`, `eps`, `quantizer`

<b>Purpose</b>	Smallest denormalized quantized number for quantizer object
<b>Syntax</b>	<code>x = denormalmin(q)</code>
<b>Description</b>	<code>x = denormalmin(q)</code> is the smallest positive denormalized quantized number where <code>q</code> is a quantizer object. Anything smaller than <code>x</code> underflows to zero with respect to the quantizer object <code>q</code> . Denormalized numbers apply only to floating-point format. When <code>q</code> represents a fixed-point number, <code>denormalmin</code> returns <code>eps(q)</code> .
<b>Examples</b>	<pre>q = quantizer('float',[6 3]); denormalmin(q)  ans =      0.0625</pre>
<b>Algorithm</b>	When <code>q</code> is a floating-point quantizer object, $x = 2^{E_{\min} - f}$ where $E_{\min}$ is equal to <code>exponentmin(q)</code> . When <code>q</code> is a fixed-point quantizer object, $x = \text{eps}(q) = 2^{-f}$ where $f$ is equal to <code>fractionlength(q)</code> .
<b>See Also</b>	<code>denormalmax</code> , <code>eps</code> , <code>quantizer</code>

# diag

---

**Purpose** Diagonal matrices or diagonals of matrix

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB `diag` reference page for more information.

**Purpose**            Display object

**Description**       Refer to the MATLAB `disp` reference page for more information.

# divide

---

**Purpose** Divide two objects

**Syntax** `c = T.divide(a,b)`

**Description** `c = T.divide(a,b)` performs division on the elements of `a` by the elements of `b`. The result `c` has the `numericType` object `T`.

`a` and `b` must have the same dimensions unless one is a scalar. If either `a` or `b` is scalar, then `c` has the dimensions of the nonscalar object.

If either `a` or `b` is a `fi` object, and the other is a MATLAB built-in numeric type, then the built-in object is cast to the word length of the `fi` object, preserving best-precision fraction length.

If `a` and `b` are both MATLAB built-in doubles, then `c` is the double-precision quotient `a./b`, and `numericType T` is ignored.

---

**Note** The `divide` function is not currently supported for [Slope Bias] signals.

---

## Examples

This example highlights the precision of the `fi divide` function.

First, create an unsigned `fi` object with an 80-bit word length and  $2^{-83}$  scaling, which puts the leading 1 of the representation into the most significant bit. Initialize the object with double-precision floating-point value 0.1, and examine the binary representation:

```
P =
fipref('NumberDisplay','bin','NumericTypeDisplay','short',...
      'FimathDisplay','none');
a = fi(0.1, false, 80, 83)

a =

110011001100110011001100110011001100110011001100110011001100110011001100110011010000000000000
00000000000000000000
(bin)
```







**Purpose** Double-precision floating-point real-world value of `fi` object

**Syntax** `double(a)`

**Description** Fixed-point numbers can be represented as

$$\textit{real-world value} = 2^{-\textit{fraction length}} \times \textit{stored integer}$$

or, equivalently,

$$\textit{real-world value} = (\textit{slope} \times \textit{stored integer}) + \textit{bias}$$

`double(a)` returns the real-world value of a `fi` object in double-precision floating point.

**See Also** `single`

# end

---

**Purpose** Last index of array

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB end reference page for more information.

---

<b>Purpose</b>	Quantized relative accuracy for <code>fi</code> or quantizer objects
<b>Syntax</b>	<code>eps(obj)</code>
<b>Description</b>	<code>eps(obj)</code> returns the value of the least significant bit of the value of the <code>fi</code> object or quantizer object <code>obj</code> . The result of this function is equivalent to that given by the Fixed-Point Toolbox <code>lsb</code> function.
<b>See Also</b>	<code>lsb</code>

**Purpose** Determine whether real-world values of two `fi` objects are equal

**Syntax** `c = eq(a,b)`  
`a == b`

**Description** `c = eq(a,b)` is called for the syntax `a == b` when `a` or `b` is a `fi` object. `a` and `b` must have the same dimensions unless one is a scalar. A scalar can be compared with another object of any size.

`a == b` does an element-by-element comparison between `a` and `b` and returns a matrix of the same size with elements set to 1 where the relation is true, and 0 where the relation is false.

**See Also** `ge`, `gt`, `isequal`, `le`, `lt`, `ne`

**Purpose** Plot error bars along curve

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB errorbar reference page for more information.

# etreeplot

---

**Purpose** Plot elimination tree

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB `etreeplot` reference page for more information.

<b>Purpose</b>	Exponent bias for quantizer object
<b>Syntax</b>	<code>b = exponentbias(q)</code>
<b>Description</b>	<code>b = exponentbias(q)</code> returns the exponent bias of the quantizer object <code>q</code> . For fixed-point quantizer objects, <code>exponentbias(q)</code> returns 0.
<b>Examples</b>	<pre>q = quantizer('double'); b = exponentbias(q)  b =      1023</pre>
<b>Algorithm</b>	For floating-point quantizer objects, $b = 2^{e-1} - 1$ where <code>e = eps(q)</code> , and <code>exponentbias</code> is the same as the exponent maximum. For fixed-point quantizer objects, <code>b = 0</code> by definition.
<b>See Also</b>	<code>eps</code> , <code>exponentlength</code> , <code>exponentmax</code> , <code>exponentmin</code>

# exponentlength

---

**Purpose** Exponent length of quantizer object

**Syntax** `e = exponentlength(q)`

**Description** `e = exponentlength(q)` returns the exponent length of quantizer object `q`. When `q` is a fixed-point quantizer object, `exponentlength(q)` returns 0. This is useful because exponent length is valid whether the quantizer object mode is floating point or fixed point.

**Examples**

```
q = quantizer('double');
e = exponentlength(q)

e =

    11
```

**Algorithm** The exponent length is part of the format of a floating-point quantizer object `[w e]`. For fixed-point quantizer objects,  $e = 0$  by definition.

**See Also** `eps`, `exponentbias`, `exponentmax`, `exponentmin`



**Purpose** Maximum exponent for quantizer object

**Syntax** `exponentmax(q)`

**Description** `exponentmax(q)` returns the maximum exponent for quantizer object `q`. When `q` is a fixed-point quantizer object, it returns 0.

**Examples**

```
q = quantizer('double');
exponentmax(q)

ans =

    1023
```

**Algorithm** For floating-point quantizer objects,

$$E_{max} = 2^{e-1} - 1$$

For fixed-point quantizer objects,  $E_{max} = 0$  by definition.

**See Also** `eps`, `exponentbias`, `exponentlength`, `exponentmin`

# exponentmin

---

**Purpose** Minimum exponent for quantizer object

**Syntax** `emin = exponentmin(q)`

**Description** `emin = exponentmin(q)` returns the minimum exponent for quantizer object `q`. If `q` is a fixed-point quantizer object, `exponentmin` returns 0.

**Examples**

```
q = quantizer('double');
emin = exponentmin(q)

emin =

    -1022
```

**Algorithm** For floating-point quantizer objects,

$$E_{min} = -2^{e-1} + 2$$

For fixed-point quantizer objects,  $E_{min} = 0$ .

**See Also** `eps`, `exponentbias`, `exponentlength`, `exponentmax`

**Purpose** Easy-to-use contour plotter

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB ezcontour reference page for more information.

# ezcontourf

---

**Purpose** Easy-to-use filled contour plotter

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB ezcontourf reference page for more information.

**Purpose** Easy-to-use 3-D mesh plotter

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB ezmesh reference page for more information.

# ezplot

---

**Purpose** Easy-to-use function plotter

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB ezplot reference page for more information.

**Purpose** Easy-to-use 3-D parametric curve plotter

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB ezplot3 reference page for more information.

# ezpolar

---

**Purpose** Easy-to-use polar coordinate plotter

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB `ezpolar` reference page for more information.



**Purpose** Easy-to-use 3-D colored surface plotter

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB ezsurf reference page for more information.

# ezsurf

---

**Purpose** Easy-to-use combination surface/contour plotter

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB ezsurf reference page for more information.

**Purpose** Plot velocity vectors

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB feather reference page for more information.

**Purpose** Construct `fi` object

**Syntax**

```
a = fi(v)
a = fi(v,s)
a = fi(v,s,w)
a = fi(v,s,w,f)
a = fi(v,s,w,slope,bias)
a = fi(v,s,w,slopeadjustmentfactor,fixedexponent,bias)
a = fi(v,T)
a = fi(v,T,F)
a = fi(... 'PropertyName',PropertyValue...)
a = fi('PropertyName',PropertyValue...)
```

**Description** You can use the `fi` constructor function in the following ways.

- `a = fi(v)` returns a signed fixed-point object with value `v`, 16-bit word length, and best-precision fraction length.
- `a = fi(v,s)` returns a fixed-point object with value `v`, signedness `s`, 16-bit word length, and best-precision fraction length. `s` can be 0 (false) for unsigned or 1 (true) for signed.
- `a = fi(v,s,w)` returns a fixed-point object with value `v`, signedness `s`, word length `w`, and best-precision fraction length.
- `a = fi(v,s,w,f)` returns a fixed-point object with value `v`, signedness `s`, word length `w`, and fraction length `f`.
- `a = fi(v,s,w,slope,bias)` returns a fixed-point object with value `v`, signedness `s`, word length `w`, slope, and bias.
- `a = fi(v,s,w,slopeadjustmentfactor,fixedexponent,bias)` returns a fixed-point object with value `v`, signedness `s`, word length `w`, `slopeadjustmentfactor`, `fixedexponent`, and bias.
- `a = fi(v,T)` returns a fixed-point object with value `v` and embedded.numericity `T`. Refer to for more information on numericity objects.

- `fi(a,F)` allows you to maintain the value and `numericType` object of `fi` object `a`, while changing its `fiMath` object to `F`. Refer to for more information on `fiMath` objects.
- `a = fi(v,T,F)` returns a fixed-point object with value `v`, embedded `numericType` `T`, and embedded `fiMath` `F`.
- `a = fi(...'PropertyName',PropertyValue...)` and `a = fi('PropertyName',PropertyValue...)` allow you to set fixed-point objects for a `fi` object by property name/property value pairs.

The `fi` object has the following three general types of properties.

---

**Note** These properties are described in detail in “`fi` Object Properties” on page 9-2 in the Properties Reference.

---

- “Data Properties” on page 11-67
- “`fiMath` Properties” on page 11-68
- “`numericType` Properties” on page 11-69

### Data Properties

The data properties of a `fi` object are always writable.

- `bin` — Stored integer value of a `fi` object in binary
- `data` — Numerical real-world value of a `fi` object
- `dec` — Stored integer value of a `fi` object in decimal
- `double` — Real-world value of a `fi` object, stored as a MATLAB `double`
- `hex` — Stored integer value of a `fi` object in hexadecimal
- `int` — Stored integer value of a `fi` object, stored in a built-in MATLAB integer data type. You can also use `int8`, `int16`, `int32`,

`uint8`, `uint16`, and `uint32` to get the stored integer value of a `fi` object in these formats

- `oct` — Stored integer value of a `fi` object in octal

These properties are described in detail in “`fi` Object Properties” on page 9-2.

### **`fimath` Properties**

When you create a `fi` object, a `fimath` object is also automatically created as a property of the `fi` object.

- `fimath` — `fimath` object associated with a `fi` object

The following `fimath` properties are, by transitivity, also properties of a `fi` object. The properties of the `fimath` object listed below are always writable.

- `CastBeforeSum` — Whether both operands are cast to the sum data type before addition
- `MaxProductWordLength` — Maximum allowable word length for the product data type
- `MaxSumWordLength` — Maximum allowable word length for the sum data type
- `OverflowMode` — Overflow mode
- `ProductBias` — Bias of the product data type
- `ProductFixedExponent` — Fixed exponent of the product data type
- `ProductFractionLength` — Fraction length, in bits, of the product data type
- `ProductMode` — Defines how the product data type is determined
- `ProductSlope` — Slope of the product data type
- `ProductSlopeAdjustmentFactor` — Slope adjustment factor of the product data type

- `ProductWordLength` — Word length, in bits, of the product data type
- `RoundMode` — Rounding mode
- `SumBias` — Bias of the sum data type
- `SumFixedExponent` — Fixed exponent of the sum data type
- `SumFractionLength` — Fraction length, in bits, of the sum data type
- `SumMode` — Defines how the sum data type is determined
- `SumSlope` — Slope of the sum data type
- `SumSlopeAdjustmentFactor` — Slope adjustment factor of the sum data type
- `SumWordLength` — The word length, in bits, of the sum data type

These properties are described in detail in “`fimath` Object Properties” on page 9-6.

### **numericType Properties**

When you create a `fi` object, a `numericType` object is also automatically created as a property of the `fi` object.

- `numericType` — Object containing all the numeric type attributes of a `fi` object

The following `numericType` properties are, by transitivity, also properties of a `fi` object. The properties of the `numericType` object listed below are not writable once the `fi` object has been created. However, you can create a copy of a `fi` object with new values specified for the `numericType` properties.

- `Bias` — Bias of a `fi` object
- `DataType` — Data type category associated with a `fi` object
- `DataTypeMode` — Data type and scaling mode of a `fi` object
- `FixedExponent` — Fixed-point exponent associated with a `fi` object

- `SlopeAdjustmentFactor` — Slope adjustment associated with a `fi` object
- `FractionLength` — Fraction length of the stored integer value of a `fi` object in bits
- `Scaling` — Fixed-point scaling mode of a `fi` object
- `Signed` — Whether a `fi` object is signed or unsigned
- `Slope` — Slope associated with a `fi` object
- `WordLength` — Word length of the stored integer value of a `fi` object in bits

These properties are described in detail in “`numericType Object Properties`” on page 9-17.

## Examples

---

**Note** For information about the display format of `fi` objects, refer to “`Display Settings`” on page 1-6.

---

### Example 1

For example, the following creates a `fi` object with a value of `pi`, a word length of 8 bits, and a fraction length of 3 bits.

```
a = fi(pi, 1, 8, 3)
```

```
a =
```

```
3.1250
```

```
      DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: binary point scaling  
          Signed: true  
      WordLength: 8  
      FractionLength: 3
```



**Example 2**

The value  $v$  can also be an array.

```
a = fi((magic(3)/10), 1, 16, 12)
```

```
a =
```

```
0.8000    0.1001    0.6001
0.3000    0.5000    0.7000
0.3999    0.8999    0.2000
```

```
        DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: binary point scaling
          Signed: true
         WordLength: 16
    FractionLength: 12
```

**Example 3**

If you omit the argument  $f$ , it is set automatically to the best precision possible.

```
a = fi(pi, 1, 8)
```

```
a =
```

```
3.1563
```

```
        DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: binary point scaling
          Signed: true
         WordLength: 8
    FractionLength: 5
```

**Example 4**

If you omit  $w$  and  $f$ , they are set automatically to 16 bits and the best precision possible, respectively.

```
a = fi(pi, 1)
```

```
a =  
  
    3.1416  
  
        DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: binary point scaling  
            Signed: true  
        WordLength: 16  
        FractionLength: 13
```

### **Example 5**

You can use property name/property value pairs to set `fi` properties when you create the object.

```
a = fi(pi, 'roundmode', 'floor', 'overflowmode', 'wrap')  
  
a =  
  
    3.1415  
  
        DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: binary point scaling  
            Signed: true  
        WordLength: 16  
        FractionLength: 13
```

### **See Also**

`fimath`, `fipref`, `numericType`, `quantizer`, “`fi` Object Properties” on page 9-2

**Purpose**

Construct fimath object

**Syntax**

```
F = fimath
F = fimath(...'PropertyName',PropertyValue...)
```

**Description**

You can use the `fimath` constructor function in the following ways:

- `F = fimath` creates a default `fimath` object.
- `F = fimath(...'PropertyName',PropertyValue...)` allows you to set the attributes of a `fimath` object using property name/property value pairs.

The properties of the `fimath` object are listed below. These properties are described in detail in “`fimath` Object Properties” on page 9-6 in the Properties Reference.

- `CastBeforeSum` — Whether both operands are cast to the sum data type before addition
- `MaxProductWordLength` — Maximum allowable word length for the product data type
- `MaxSumWordLength` — Maximum allowable word length for the sum data type
- `OverflowMode` — Overflow-handling mode
- `ProductBias` — Bias of the product data type
- `ProductFixedExponent` — Fixed exponent of the product data type
- `ProductFractionLength` — Fraction length, in bits, of the product data type
- `ProductMode` — Defines how the product data type is determined
- `ProductSlope` — Slope of the product data type
- `ProductSlopeAdjustmentFactor` — Slope adjustment factor of the product data type

- ProductWordLength — Word length, in bits, of the product data type
- RoundMode — Rounding mode
- SumBias — Bias of the sum data type
- SumFixedExponent — Fixed exponent of the sum data type
- SumFractionLength — Fraction length, in bits, of the sum data type
- SumMode — Defines how the sum data type is determined
- SumSlope — Slope of the sum data type
- SumSlopeAdjustmentFactor — Slope adjustment factor of the sum data type
- SumWordLength — Word length, in bits, of the sum data type

## Examples

### Example 1

Type

```
F = fimath
```

to create a default fimath object.

```
F = fimath
```

```
F =
```

```
          RoundMode: nearest  
          OverflowMode: saturate  
          ProductMode: FullPrecision  
MaxProductWordLength: 128  
          SumMode: FullPrecision  
MaxSumWordLength: 128  
          CastBeforeSum: true
```

## Example 2

You can set properties of `fimath` objects at the time of object creation by including properties after the arguments of the `fimath` constructor function. For example, to set the overflow mode to saturate and the rounding mode to convergent,

```
F = fimath('OverflowMode','saturate','RoundMode','convergent')
```

```
F =
```

```
          RoundMode: convergent
    OverflowMode: saturate
    ProductMode: FullPrecision
MaxProductWordLength: 128
          SumMode: FullPrecision
MaxSumWordLength: 128
    CastBeforeSum: true
```

## See Also

`fi`, `fipref`, `numericType`, `quantizer`, “`fimath` Object Properties” on page 9-6

# fipref

---

**Purpose** Construct fipref object

**Syntax**  
`P = fipref`  
`P = fipref(...'PropertyName',PropertyValue...)`

**Description** You can use the fipref constructor function in the following ways:

- `P = fipref` creates a default fipref object.
- `P = fipref(...'PropertyName',PropertyValue...)` allows you to set the attributes of a object using property name/property value pairs.

The properties of the fipref object are listed below. These properties are described in detail in “fipref Object Properties” on page 9-14.

- `FimathDisplay` — Display options for the fimath attributes of a fi object
- `DataTypeOverride` — Data type override options
- `LoggingMode` — Logging options for operations performed on fi objects
- `NumericTypeDisplay` — Display options for the numeric type attributes of a fi object
- `NumberDisplay` — Display options for the value of a fi object

Your fipref settings persist throughout your MATLAB session. Use `reset(fipref)` to return to the default settings during your session. Use `savefipref` to save your display preferences for subsequent MATLAB sessions.

## Examples

### Example 1

Type

```
P = fipref
```

to create a default fipref object.

```
P =  
  
    NumberDisplay: 'RealWorldValue'  
    NumericTypeDisplay: 'full'  
    FimathDisplay: 'full'  
    LoggingMode: 'Off'  
    DataTypeOverride: 'ForceOff'
```

## Example 2

You can set properties of fipref objects at the time of object creation by including properties after the arguments of the fipref constructor function. For example, to set NumberDisplay to bin and AttributesDisplay to short,

```
P =  
  
    NumberDisplay: 'bin'  
    NumericTypeDisplay: 'short'  
    FimathDisplay: 'full'  
    LoggingMode: 'Off'  
    DataTypeOverride: 'ForceOff'
```

## See Also

fi, fimath, numericitype, quantizer, savefipref, “fipref Object Properties” on page 9-14

# fplot

---

**Purpose** Plot function between specified limits

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB `fplot` reference page for more information.



<b>Purpose</b>	Fraction length of quantizer object
<b>Syntax</b>	<code>fractionlength(q)</code>
<b>Description</b>	<code>fractionlength(q)</code> returns the fraction length of quantizer object <code>q</code> .
<b>Algorithm</b>	For floating-point quantizer objects, $f = w - e - 1$ , where $w$ is the word length and $e$ is the exponent length. For fixed-point quantizer objects, $f$ is part of the format <code>[w f]</code> .
<b>See Also</b>	<code>fi</code> , <code>numerictype</code> , <code>quantizer</code> , <code>wordlength</code>

**Purpose** Determine whether real-world value of one `fi` object is greater than or equal to another

**Syntax**  
`c = ge(a,b)`  
`a >= b`

**Description** `c = ge(a,b)` is called for the syntax '`a >= b`' when `a` or `b` is a `fi` object. `a` and `b` must have the same dimensions unless one is a scalar. A scalar can be compared with another object of any size.

`a >= b` does an element-by-element comparison between `a` and `b` and returns a matrix of the same size with elements set to 1 where the relation is true, and 0 where the relation is false.

**See Also** `eq`, `gt`, `le`, `lt`, `ne`

**Purpose** Property values of quantizer object

**Syntax**

```
get(q,pn,pv)
value = get(q, 'propertyname')
structure = get(q)
```

**Description** `get(q,pn,pv)` displays the property names and property values associated with quantizer object `q`.

`pn` is the name of a property of the object `obj`, and `pv` is the value associated with `pn`.

`value = get(q, 'propertyname')` returns the property value associated with the property named in the string `'propertyname'` for the quantizer object `q`. If you replace the string `'propertyname'` by a cell array of a vector of strings containing property names, `get` returns a cell array of a vector of corresponding values.

`structure = get(q)` returns a structure containing the properties and states of quantizer object `q`.

**See Also** `quantizer`, `set`

# gplot

---

**Purpose** Plot set of nodes using adjacency matrix

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB `gplot` reference page for more information.

---

<b>Purpose</b>	Determine whether real-world value of one <code>fi</code> object is greater than another
<b>Syntax</b>	<code>c = gt(a,b)</code> <code>a &gt; b</code>
<b>Description</b>	<code>c = gt(a,b)</code> is called for the syntax ' <code>a &gt; b</code> ' when <code>a</code> or <code>b</code> is a <code>fi</code> object. <code>a</code> and <code>b</code> must have the same dimensions unless one is a scalar. A scalar can be compared with another object of any size.  <code>a &gt; b</code> does an element-by-element comparison between <code>a</code> and <code>b</code> and returns a matrix of the same size with elements set to 1 where the relation is true, and 0 where the relation is false.
<b>See Also</b>	<code>eq</code> , <code>ge</code> , <code>le</code> , <code>lt</code> , <code>ne</code>

# hankel

---

**Purpose** Hankel matrix

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB `hankel` reference page for more information.

**Purpose** Hexadecimal representation of stored integer of `fi` object

**Syntax** `hexadecimal(a)`

**Description** Fixed-point numbers can be represented as

$$\text{real-world value} = 2^{-\text{fraction length}} \times \text{stored integer}$$

or, equivalently,

$$\text{real-world value} = (\text{slope} \times \text{stored integer}) + \text{bias}$$

The stored integer is the raw binary number, in which the binary point is assumed to be at the far right of the word.

`hexadecimal(a)` returns the stored integer of `fi` object `a` in hexadecimal format as a string.

**Examples** The following code

```
a = fi([-1 1],1,8,7);  
hex(a)
```

returns

```
80    7f
```

**See Also** `bin`, `dec`, `int`, `oct`

# hex2num

---

**Purpose** Convert hexadecimal string to number using quantizer object

**Syntax**  
`x = hex2num(q,h)`  
`[x1,x2,...] = hex2num(q,h1,h2,...)`

**Description** `x = hex2num(q,h)` converts hexadecimal string `h` to numeric matrix `x`. The attributes of the numbers in `x` are specified by quantizer object `q`. When `h` is a cell array containing hexadecimal strings, `hex2num` returns `x` as a cell array of the same dimension containing numbers. For fixed-point hexadecimal strings, `hex2num` uses two's complement representation. For floating-point strings, the representation is IEEE Standard 754 style.

When there are fewer hexadecimal digits than needed to represent the number, the fixed-point conversion zero-fills on the left. Floating-point conversion zero-fills on the right.

`[x1,x2,...] = hex2num(q,h1,h2,...)` converts hexadecimal strings `h1, h2,...` to numeric matrices `x1, x2,...`

`hex2num` and `num2hex` are inverses of one another, with the distinction that `num2hex` returns the hexadecimal strings in a column.

**Examples** To create all the 4-bit fixed-point two's complement numbers in fractional form, use the following code.

```
q = quantizer([4 3]);  
h = ['7 3 F B'; '6 2 E A'; '5 1 D 9'; '4 0 C 8'];  
x = hex2num(q,h)
```

```
x =  
  
    0.8750    0.3750   -0.1250   -0.6250  
    0.7500    0.2500   -0.2500   -0.7500  
    0.6250    0.1250   -0.3750   -0.8750  
    0.5000         0   -0.5000   -1.0000
```

**See Also** `bin2num`, `num2bin`, `num2hex`, `num2int`



**Purpose** Create histogram plot

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB `hist` reference page for more information.

# histc

---

**Purpose** Histogram count

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB `histc` reference page for more information.

---

<b>Purpose</b>	Horizontally concatenate multiple <code>fi</code> objects
<b>Syntax</b>	<code>c = horzcat(a,b,...)</code> <code>[a, b, ...]</code>
<b>Description</b>	<p><code>c = horzcat(a,b,...)</code> is called for the syntax <code>[a, b, ...]</code> when any of <code>a, b, ...</code>, is a <code>fi</code> object.</p> <p><code>[a b, ...]</code> or <code>[a,b, ...]</code> is the horizontal concatenation of matrices <code>a</code> and <code>b</code>. <code>a</code> and <code>b</code> must have the same number of rows. Any number of matrices can be concatenated within one pair of brackets. N-D arrays are horizontally concatenated along the second dimension. The first and remaining dimensions must match.</p> <p>Horizontal and vertical concatenation can be combined together as in <code>[1 2;3 4]</code>.</p> <p><code>[a b; c]</code> is allowed if the number of rows of <code>a</code> equals the number of rows of <code>b</code>, and if the number of columns of <code>a</code> plus the number of columns of <code>b</code> equals the number of columns of <code>c</code>.</p> <p>The matrices in a concatenation expression can themselves be formed via a concatenation as in <code>[a b;[c d]]</code>.</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note</b> The <code>fimath</code> and <code>numericType</code> objects of a concatenated matrix of <code>fi</code> objects <code>c</code> are taken from the leftmost <code>fi</code> object in the list <code>(a,b,...)</code>.</p> <hr/>
<b>See Also</b>	<code>vertcat</code>

# imag

---

**Purpose**            Imaginary part of complex number

**Description**       Refer to the MATLAB `imag` reference page for more information.

- Purpose** Number of integer bits needed for fixed-point inner product
- Syntax** `innerprodintbits(a,b)`
- Description** `innerprodintbits(a,b)` computes the minimum number of integer bits necessary in the inner product of `a'*b` to guarantee that no overflows occur and to preserve best precision.
- `a` and `b` are `fi` vectors.
  - The values of `a` are known.
  - Only the numeric type of `b` is relevant. The values of `b` are ignored.

**Examples** The primary use of this function is to determine the number of integer bits necessary in the output `Y` of an FIR filter that computes the inner product between constant coefficient row vector `B` and state column vector `Z`. For example,

```
for k=1:length(X);
    Z = [X(k);Z(1:end-1)];
    Y(k) = B * Z;
end
```

**Algorithm** In general, an inner product grows  $\log_2(n)$  bits for vectors of length `n`. However, in the case of this function the vector `a` is known and its values do not change. This knowledge is used to compute the smallest number of integer bits that are necessary in the output to guarantee that no overflow will occur.

The largest gain occurs when the vector `b` has the same sign as the constant vector `a`. Therefore, the largest gain due to the vector `a` is `a*sign(a')`, which is equal to `sum(abs(a))`.

The overall number of integer bits necessary to guarantee that no overflow occurs in the inner product is computed by:

`log2(sum(abs(a)) + number of integer bits in b + 1 sign bit`

# inspect

---

**Purpose** Property Inspector

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB `inspect` reference page for more information.

**Purpose** Smallest built-in integer in which stored integer value of `fi` object will fit

**Syntax** `int(a)`

**Description** Fixed-point numbers can be represented as

$$\text{real-world value} = 2^{-\text{fraction length}} \times \text{stored integer}$$

or, equivalently,

$$\text{real-world value} = (\text{slope} \times \text{stored integer}) + \text{bias}$$

The stored integer is the raw binary number, in which the binary point is assumed to be at the far right of the word.

`int(a)` returns the smallest built-in integer of the data type in which the stored integer value of `fi` object `a` will fit.

The following table gives the return type of the `int` function.

Word Length	Return Type for Signed <code>fi</code>	Return Type for Unsigned <code>fi</code>
word length <= 8 bits	<code>int8</code>	<code>uint8</code>
8 bits < word length <= 16 bits	<code>int16</code>	<code>uint16</code>
16 bits < word length <= 32 bits	<code>int32</code>	<code>uint32</code>
32 < word length	<code>double</code>	<code>double</code>

---

**Note** When the word length is greater than 52 bits, the return value can have quantization error. For bit-true integer representation of very large word lengths, use `bin`, `oct`, `dec`, `hex`, or `sdec`.

---

# int

---

## See Also

`int8`, `int16`, `int32`, `uint8`, `uint16`, `uint32`



**Purpose** Stored integer value of fi object as built-in int8

**Syntax** int8(a)

**Description** Fixed-point numbers can be represented as

$$\text{real-world value} = 2^{-\text{fraction length}} \times \text{stored integer}$$

or, equivalently,

$$\text{real-world value} = (\text{slope} \times \text{stored integer}) + \text{bias}$$

The stored integer is the raw binary number, in which the binary point is assumed to be at the far right of the word.

int8(a) returns the stored integer value of fi object a as a built-in int8. If the stored integer word length is too big for an int8, or if the stored integer is unsigned, the returned value saturates to an int8.

**See Also** int, int16, int32, uint8, uint16, uint32

# int16

---

**Purpose** Stored integer value of fi object as built-in int16

**Syntax** int16(a)

**Description** Fixed-point numbers can be represented as

$$\textit{real-world value} = 2^{-\textit{fraction length}} \times \textit{stored integer}$$

or, equivalently,

$$\textit{real-world value} = (\textit{slope} \times \textit{stored integer}) + \textit{bias}$$

The stored integer is the raw binary number, in which the binary point is assumed to be at the far right of the word.

int16(a) returns the stored integer value of fi object a as a built-in int16. If the stored integer word length is too big for an int16, or if the stored integer is unsigned, the returned value saturates to an int16.

**See Also** int, int8, int32, uint8, uint16, uint32

**Purpose** Stored integer value of `fi` object as built-in `int32`

**Syntax** `int32(a)`

**Description** Fixed-point numbers can be represented as

$$\text{real-world value} = 2^{-\text{fraction length}} \times \text{stored integer}$$

or, equivalently,

$$\text{real-world value} = (\text{slope} \times \text{stored integer}) + \text{bias}$$

The stored integer is the raw binary number, in which the binary point is assumed to be at the far right of the word.

`int32(a)` returns the stored integer value of `fi` object `a` as a built-in `int32`. If the stored integer word length is too big for an `int32`, or if the stored integer is unsigned, the returned value saturates to an `int32`.

**See Also** `int`, `int8`, `int16`, `uint8`, `uint16`, `uint32`

# intmax

---

**Purpose** Largest positive stored integer value representable by numeric type of `fi` object

**Syntax** `x = intmax(a)`

**Description** `x = intmax(a)` returns the largest positive stored integer value representable by the numeric type of `a`.

**See Also** `intmin`, `lsb`, `stripScaling`

**Purpose**           Smallest stored integer value representable by numeric type of fi object

**Syntax**           x = intmin(a)

**Description**       x = intmin(a) returns the smallest stored integer value representable by the numeric type of a.

**Examples**           a = fi(pi, true, 16, 12);  
                      x = intmin(a)

x =

-32768

                      DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: binary point scaling  
                                  Signed: true  
                                  WordLength: 16  
                                  FractionLength: 0

**See Also**           intmax, lsb, stripscaling

# ipermute

---

**Purpose** Inverse permute dimensions of multidimensional array

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB `ipermute` reference page for more information.

**Purpose** Determine whether fi object is column vector

**Syntax** `iscolumn(a)`

**Description** `iscolumn(a)` returns 1 if the fi object `a` is a column vector, and 0 otherwise.

**See Also** `isrow`

# **isempty**

---

**Purpose** Determine whether array is empty

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB `isempty` reference page for more information.



**Purpose** Determine whether real-world values of two `fi` objects are equal, or determine whether properties of two `fimath`, `numericType`, or `quantizer` objects are equal

**Syntax**

```
isequal(a,b,...)  
isequal(F,G,...)  
isequal(T,U,...)  
isequal(q,r,...)
```

**Description**

`isequal(a,b,...)` returns 1 if all the `fi` object inputs have the same real-world value. Otherwise, the function returns 0.

`isequal(F,G,...)` returns 1 if all the `fimath` object inputs have the same properties. Otherwise, the function returns 0.

`isequal(T,U,...)` returns 1 if all the `numericType` object inputs have the same properties. Otherwise, the function returns 0.

`isequal(q,r,...)` returns 1 if all the `quantizer` object inputs have the same properties. Otherwise, the function returns 0.

**See Also** `eq`, `ispropequal`

# isfi

---

<b>Purpose</b>	Determine whether variable is <code>fi</code> object
<b>Syntax</b>	<code>isfi(a)</code>
<b>Description</b>	<code>isfi(a)</code> returns 1 if <code>a</code> is a <code>fi</code> object, and 0 otherwise.
<b>See Also</b>	<code>fi</code> , <code>isfimath</code> , <code>isnumericitype</code>

- Purpose** Determine whether variable is fimath object
- Syntax** `isfimath(F)`
- Description** `isfimath(F)` returns 1 if F is a fimath object, and 0 otherwise.
- See Also** `fimath`, `isfi`, `isnumericitype`

# isfinite

---

**Purpose** Determine whether array elements are finite

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB `isfinite` reference page for more information.

**Purpose** Determine whether array elements are infinite

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB `isinf` reference page for more information.

# isnan

---

**Purpose** Determine whether array elements are NaN

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB `isnan` reference page for more information.

**Purpose** Determine whether input is numeric array

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB `isnumeric` reference page for more information.

# isnumerictype

---

<b>Purpose</b>	Determine whether variable is numerictype object
<b>Syntax</b>	<code>isnumerictype(T)</code>
<b>Description</b>	<code>isnumerictype(T)</code> returns 1 if a is a numerictype object, and 0 otherwise.
<b>See Also</b>	<code>isfi</code> , <code>isfimath</code> , <code>numerictype</code>



**Purpose** Determine whether input is MATLAB OOPS object

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB `isobject` reference page for more information.

# ispropequal

---

<b>Purpose</b>	Determine whether properties of two <code>fi</code> objects are equal
<b>Syntax</b>	<code>ispropequal(a,b,...)</code>
<b>Description</b>	<code>ispropequal(a,b,...)</code> returns 1 if all the inputs are <code>fi</code> objects and all the inputs have the same properties. Otherwise, the function returns 0. To compare the real-world values of two <code>fi</code> objects <code>a</code> and <code>b</code> , use <code>a == b</code> or <code>isequal(a,b)</code> .
<b>See Also</b>	<code>fi</code> , <code>isequal</code>

**Purpose** Determine whether array elements are real

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB `isreal` reference page for more information.

# isrow

---

<b>Purpose</b>	Determine whether fi object is row vector
<b>Syntax</b>	<code>isrow(a)</code>
<b>Description</b>	<code>isrow(a)</code> returns 1 if the fi object a is a row vector, and 0 otherwise.
<b>See Also</b>	<code>iscolumn</code>

**Purpose** Determine whether input is scalar

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB `isscalar` reference page for more information.

# issigned

---

<b>Purpose</b>	Determine whether <code>fi</code> object is signed
<b>Syntax</b>	<code>issigned(a)</code>
<b>Description</b>	<code>issigned(a)</code> returns 1 if the <code>fi</code> object <code>a</code> is signed, and 0 if it is unsigned.

**Purpose** Determine whether input is vector

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB `isvector` reference page for more information.

# le

---

**Purpose** Determine whether real-world value of `fi` object is less than or equal to another

**Syntax**  
`c = le(a,b)`  
`a <= b`

**Description** `c = le(a,b)` is called for the syntax '`a <= b`' when `a` or `b` is a `fi` object. `a` and `b` must have the same dimensions unless one is a scalar. A scalar can be compared with another object of any size.

`a <= b` does an element-by-element comparison between `a` and `b` and returns a matrix of the same size with elements set to 1 where the relation is true, and 0 where the relation is false.

**See Also** `eq`, `ge`, `gt`, `lt`, `ne`



**Purpose**      Vector length

**Description**      Refer to the MATLAB length reference page for more information.

# line

---

**Purpose** Create line object

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB `line` reference page for more information.

**Purpose** Convert numeric values to logical

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB `logical` reference page for more information.

# loglog

---

**Purpose** Create log-log scale plot

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB loglog reference page for more information.

<b>Purpose</b>	Lower bound of range of fi object
<b>Syntax</b>	<code>lowerbound(a)</code>
<b>Description</b>	<code>lowerbound(a)</code> returns the lower bound of the range of fi object a. If $L = \text{lowerbound}(a)$ and $U = \text{upperbound}(a)$ , then $[L, U] = \text{range}(a)$ .
<b>See Also</b>	<code>range</code> , <code>upperbound</code>

# lsb

---

<b>Purpose</b>	Scaling of least significant bit of <code>f i</code> object
<b>Syntax</b>	<code>lsb(a)</code>
<b>Description</b>	<code>lsb(a)</code> returns the scaling of the least significant bit of <code>f i</code> object <code>a</code> . The result is equivalent to the result given by the <code>eps</code> function.
<b>See Also</b>	<code>eps</code>

---

<b>Purpose</b>	Determine whether real-world value of one <code>fi</code> object is less than another
<b>Syntax</b>	<code>c = lt(a,b)</code> <code>a &lt; b</code>
<b>Description</b>	<code>c = lt(a,b)</code> is called for the syntax ' <code>a &lt; b</code> ' when <code>a</code> or <code>b</code> is a <code>fi</code> object. <code>a</code> and <code>b</code> must have the same dimensions unless one is a scalar. A scalar can be compared with another object of any size.  <code>a &lt; b</code> does an element-by-element comparison between <code>a</code> and <code>b</code> and returns a matrix of the same size with elements set to 1 where the relation is true, and 0 where the relation is false.
<b>See Also</b>	<code>eq</code> , <code>ge</code> , <code>gt</code> , <code>le</code> , <code>ne</code>

# max

---

**Purpose** Largest element in array of `fi` objects

**Syntax**

```
max(a)
max(a,b)
[y,v] = max(a)
[y,v] = max(a,[],dim)
```

**Description**

- For vectors, `max(a)` is the largest element in `a`.
- For matrices, `max(a)` is a row vector containing the maximum element from each column.
- For N-D arrays, `max(a)` operates along the first nonsingleton dimension.

`max(a,b)` returns an array the same size as `a` and `b` with the largest elements taken from `a` or `b`. Either one can be a scalar.

`[y,v] = max(a)` returns the indices of the maximum values in vector `v`. If the values along the first nonsingleton dimension contain more than one maximal element, the index of the first one is returned.

`[y,v] = max(a,[],dim)` operates along the dimension `dim`.

When complex, the magnitude `max(abs(a))` is used, and the angle `angle(a)` is ignored. NaNs are ignored when computing the maximum.

**See Also** `min`



**Purpose** Largest real-world value of `fi` object or maximum value of quantizer object before quantization

**Syntax** `maxlog(a)`  
`maxlog(q)`

**Description** `maxlog(a)` returns the largest real-world value of `fi` object a since logging was turned on or since the last time the log was reset for the object.

Turn on logging by setting the `fipref` property `LoggingMode` to `on`. Reset logging for a `fi` object using the `resetlog` function.

`maxlog(q)` is the maximum value before quantization during a call to `quantize(q,...)` for quantizer object `q`. This value is the maximum value encountered over successive calls to `quantize` and is reset with `resetlog(q)`. `maxlog(q)` is equivalent to `get(q,'maxlog')` and `q.maxlog`.

**Examples**

```
P = fipref('LoggingMode','on');
x = fi([-1.5 eps 0.5], true, 16, 15);
x(1) = 3.0;
maxlog(x)
```

```
ans =
```

```
3
```

**See Also** `fipref`, `minlog`, `noverflows`, `nunderflows`, `resetlog`

# mesh

---

**Purpose** Create mesh plot

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB mesh reference page for more information.

**Purpose** Create mesh plot with contour plot

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB `meshc` reference page for more information.

# meshz

---

**Purpose** Create mesh plot with curtain plot

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB `meshz` reference page for more information.

**Purpose**

Smallest element in array of `fi` objects

**Syntax**

```
min(a)
min(a,b)
[y,v] = min(a)
[y,v] = min(a,[],dim)
```

**Description**

- For vectors, `min(a)` is the smallest element in `a`.
- For matrices, `min(a)` is a row vector containing the minimum element from each column.
- For N-D arrays, `min(a)` operates along the first nonsingleton dimension.

`min(a,b)` returns an array the same size as `a` and `b` with the smallest elements taken from `a` or `b`. Either one can be a scalar.

`[y,v] = min(a)` returns the indices of the minimum values in vector `v`. If the values along the first nonsingleton dimension contain more than one minimal element, the index of the first one is returned.

`[y,v] = min(a,[],dim)` operates along the dimension `dim`.

When complex, the magnitude `min(abs(a))` is used, and the angle `angle(a)` is ignored. NaNs are ignored when computing the minimum.

**See Also**

`max`

# minlog

---

**Purpose** Smallest real-world value of `fi` object or minimum value of quantizer object before quantization

**Syntax** `minlog(a)`  
`minlog(q)`

**Description** `minlog(a)` returns the smallest real-world value of `fi` object a since logging was turned on or since the last time the log was reset for the object.

Turn on logging by setting the `fipref` property `LoggingMode` to `on`.  
Reset logging for a `fi` object using the `resetlog` function.

`minlog(q)` is the minimum value before quantization during a call to `quantize(q, ...)` for quantizer object `q`. This value is the minimum value encountered over successive calls to `quantize` and is reset with `resetlog(q)`. `minlog(q)` is equivalent to `get(q, 'minlog')` and `q.minlog`.

**Examples**

```
P = fipref('LoggingMode','on');
x = fi([-1.5 eps 0.5], true, 16, 15);
x(1) = 3.0;
minlog(x)

ans =

    -1.5
```

**See Also** `fipref`, `maxlog`, `noverflows`, `nunderflows`, `resetlog`

**Purpose** Matrix difference between `fi` objects

**Syntax** `minus(a,b)`

**Description** `minus(a,b)` is called for the syntax '`a - b`' when `a` or `b` is an object. `a - b` subtracts matrix `b` from matrix `a`. `a` and `b` must have the same dimensions unless one is a scalar (a 1-by-1 matrix). A scalar can be subtracted from anything.

`minus` does not support `fi` objects of data type `Boolean`.

**See Also** `mtimes`, `plus`, `times`, `uminus`

**Purpose** Multiply two objects using fimath object

**Syntax** `c = F.mpy(a,b)`

**Description** `c = F.mpy(a,b)` performs elementwise multiplication on `a` and `b` using fimath object `F`. This is helpful in cases when you want to override the fimath objects of `a` and `b`, or if the fimath objects of `a` and `b` are different. `a` and `b` must have the same dimensions unless one is a scalar. If either `a` or `b` is scalar, then `c` has the dimensions of the nonscalar object. If either `a` or `b` is a `fi` object, and the other is a MATLAB built-in numeric type, then the built-in object is cast to the word length of the `fi` object, preserving best-precision fraction length.

**Examples** In this example, `c` is the 40-bit product of `a` and `b` with fraction length 30.

```
a = fi(pi);
b = fi(exp(1));
F = fimath('ProductMode','SpecifyPrecision',...
    'ProductWordLength',40,'ProductFractionLength',30);
c = F.mpy(a, b)
```

```
c =
```

```
8.5397
```

```
DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: binary point scaling
Signed: true
WordLength: 40
FractionLength: 30
```

```
RoundMode: nearest
OverflowMode: saturate
ProductMode: SpecifyPrecision
ProductWordLength: 40
ProductFractionLength: 30
```



```
SumMode: FullPrecision
MaxSumWordLength: 128
CastBeforeSum: true
```

**Algorithm**

`c = F.mpy(a,b)` is equivalent to

```
a.fimath = F;
b.fimath = F;
c = a .* b;
```

except that the `fimath` properties of `a` and `b` are not modified when you use the functional form.

**See Also**

`add`, `divide`, `fi`, `fimath`, `numericity`, `sub`, `sum`

# mtimes

---

**Purpose** Matrix product of `fi` objects

**Syntax** `mtimes(a,b)`

**Description** `mtimes(a,b)` is called for the syntax '`a * b`' when `a` or `b` is an object. `a * b` is the matrix product of `a` and `b`. Any scalar (a 1-by-1 matrix) can multiply anything. Otherwise, the number of columns of `a` must equal the number of rows of `b`. `mtimes` does not support `fi` objects of data type `Boolean`.

**See Also** `plus`, `minus`, `times`, `uminus`

**Purpose**            Number of array dimensions

**Description**        Refer to the MATLAB `ndims` reference page for more information.

# ne

---

**Purpose** Determine whether real-world values of two `fi` objects are not equal

**Syntax**  
`c = ne(a,b)`  
`a ~= b`

**Description** `c = ne(a,b)` is called for the syntax '`a ~= b`' when `a` or `b` is a `fi` object. `a` and `b` must have the same dimensions unless one is a scalar. A scalar can be compared with another object of any size.

`a ~= b` does an element-by-element comparison between `a` and `b` and returns a matrix of the same size with elements set to 1 where the relation is true, and 0 where the relation is false.

**See Also** `eq`, `ge`, `gt`, `le`, `lt`

<b>Purpose</b>	Number of operations
<b>Syntax</b>	<code>noperations(q)</code>
<b>Description</b>	<p><code>noperations(q)</code> is the number of quantization operations during a call to <code>quantize(q, ...)</code> for quantizer object <code>q</code>. This value accumulates over successive calls to <code>quantize</code>. You reset the value of <code>noperations</code> to zero by issuing the command <code>resetlog(q)</code>.</p> <p>Each time any data element is quantized, <code>noperations</code> is incremented by one. The real and complex parts are counted separately. For example, <code>(complex * complex)</code> counts four quantization operations for products and two for sum, because <math>(a+bi)*(c+di) = (a*c - b*d) + (a*d + b*c)</math>. In contrast, <code>(real*real)</code> counts one quantization operation.</p> <p>In addition, the real and complex parts of the inputs are quantized individually. As a result, for a complex input of length 204 elements, <code>noperations</code> counts 408 quantizations: 204 for the real part of the input and 204 for the complex part.</p> <p>If any inputs, states, or coefficients are complex-valued, they are all expanded from real values to complex values, with a corresponding increase in the number of quantization operations recorded by <code>noperations</code>. In concrete terms, <code>(real*real)</code> requires fewer quantizations than <code>(real*complex)</code> and <code>(complex*complex)</code>. Changing all the values to complex because one is complex, such as the coefficient, makes the <code>(real*real)</code> into <code>(real*complex)</code>, raising <code>noperations</code> count.</p>
<b>See Also</b>	<code>maxlog</code> , <code>minlog</code>

# not

---

**Purpose** Find logical NOT of array or scalar input

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB not reference page for more information.

**Purpose** Number of overflows

**Syntax** `noverflows(a)`  
`noverflows(q)`

**Description** `noverflows(a)` returns the number of overflows of `fi` object `a` since logging was turned on or since the last time the log was reset for the object.

Turn on logging by setting the `fipref` property `LoggingMode` to `on`.  
Reset logging for a `fi` object using the `resetlog` function.

`noverflows(q)` returns the accumulated number of overflows resulting from quantization operations performed by a quantizer object `q`.

**See Also** `maxlog`, `minlog`, `nunderflows`, `resetlog`

# num2bin

---

**Purpose** Convert number to binary string using quantizer object

**Syntax** `y = num2bin(q,x)`

**Description** `y = num2bin(q,x)` converts numeric array `x` into binary strings returned in `y`. When `x` is a cell array, each numeric element of `x` is converted to binary. If `x` is a structure, each numeric field of `x` is converted to binary.

`num2bin` and `bin2num` are inverses of one another, differing in that `num2bin` returns the binary strings in a column.

**Examples**

```
x = magic(3)/9;
q = quantizer([4,3]);
y = num2bin(q,x)
Warning: 1 overflow.
y =

0111
0010
0011
0000
0100
0111
0101
0110
0001
```

**See Also** `bin2num`, `hex2num`, `num2hex`, `num2int`



**Purpose** Convert number to hexadecimal equivalent using quantizer object

**Syntax** `y = num2hex(q,x)`

**Description** `y = num2hex(q,x)` converts numeric array `x` into hexadecimal strings returned in `y`. When `x` is a cell array, each numeric element of `x` is converted to hexadecimal. If `x` is a structure, each numeric field of `x` is converted to hexadecimal.

For fixed-point quantizer objects, the representation is two's complement. For floating-point quantizer objects, the representation is IEEE Standard 754 style.

For example, for `q = quantizer('double')`

```
num2hex(q,nan)
ans =
fff8000000000000
```

The leading fraction bit is 1, all other fraction bits are 0. Sign bit is 1, exponent bits are all 1.

```
num2hex(q,inf)
ans =
7ff0000000000000
```

Sign bit is 0, exponent bits are all 1, all fraction bits are 0.

```
num2hex(q,-inf)
ans =
fff0000000000000
```

# num2hex

---

Sign bit is 1, exponent bits are all 1, all fraction bits are 0.

num2hex and hex2num are inverses of each other, except that num2hex returns the hexadecimal strings in a column.

## Examples

This is a floating-point example using a quantizer object `q` that has 6-bit word length and 3-bit exponent length.

```
x = magic(3);  
q = quantizer('float',[6 3]);  
y = num2hex(q,x)
```

```
y =
```

```
18  
12  
14  
0c  
15  
18  
16  
17  
10
```

## See Also

bin2num, hex2num, num2bin, num2int

**Purpose**

Convert number to signed integer

**Syntax**

```
y = num2int(q,x)
[y1,y,...] = num2int(q,x1,x,...)
```

**Description**

`y = num2int(q,x)` uses `q.format` to convert numeric `x` to an integer.

`[y1,y,...] = num2int(q,x1,x,...)` uses `q.format` to convert numeric values `x1, x2,...` to integers `y1,y2,...`

**Examples**

All the two's complement 4-bit numbers in fractional form are given by

```
x = [0.875 0.375 -0.125 -0.625
      0.750 0.250 -0.250 -0.750
      0.625 0.125 -0.375 -0.875
      0.500 0.000 -0.500 -1.000];
```

```
q=quantizer([4 3]);
```

```
y = num2int(q,x)
y =
```

```
7     3     -1     -5
6     2     -2     -6
5     1     -3     -7
4     0     -4     -8
```

**Algorithm**

When `q` is a fixed-point quantizer object, `f` is equal to `fractionlength(q)`, and `x` is numeric

$$y = x \times 2^f$$

When `q` is a floating-point quantizer object, `y = x`. `num2int` is meaningful only for fixed-point quantizer objects.

**See Also**

`bin2num`, `hex2num`, `num2bin`, `num2hex`

# numberofelements

---

**Purpose**            Number of data elements in `fi` array

**Syntax**            `numberofelements(a)`

**Description**        `numberofelements(a)` returns the number of data elements in a `fi` array. `numberofelements(a) == prod(size(a))`.

Note that `fi` is a MATLAB object, and therefore `numel(a)` returns 1 when `a` is a `fi` object. Refer to the information about classes in the MATLAB `numel` reference page.

**See Also**            `max`, `min`, `numel`

**Purpose** Construct numerictype object

**Syntax**

```
T = numerictype
T = numerictype(s)
T = numerictype(s,w)
T = numerictype(s,w,f)
T = numerictype(s,w,slope,bias)
T = numerictype(s,w,slopeadjustmentfactor,fixedexponent,bias)
T = numerictype(property1,value1, ...)
T = numerictype(T1, property1, value1, ...)
T = numerictype('double')
T = numerictype('single')
T = numerictype('boolean')
```

**Description** You can use the numerictype constructor function in the following ways:

- `T = numerictype` creates a default numerictype object.
- `T = numerictype(s)` creates a numerictype object with Fixed-point: unspecified scaling, signedness `s`, and 16-bit word length.
- `T = numerictype(s,w)` creates a numerictype object with Fixed-point: unspecified scaling, signedness `s`, and word length `w`.
- `T = numerictype(s,w,f)` creates a numerictype object with Fixed-point: binary point scaling, signedness `s`, word length `w` and fraction length `f`.
- `T = numerictype(s,w,slope,bias)` creates a numerictype object with Fixed-point: slope and bias scaling, signedness `s`, word length `w`, slope, and bias.
- `T = numerictype(s,w,slopeadjustmentfactor,fixedexponent,bias)` creates a numerictype object with Fixed-point: slope and bias scaling, signedness `s`, word length `w`, slopeadjustmentfactor, fixedexponent, and bias.

# numerictype

---

- `T = numerictype(property1,value1, ...)` allows you to set properties for a numerictype object using property name/property value pairs.
- `T = numerictype(T1, property1, value1, ...)` allows you to make a copy of an existing numerictype object, while modifying any or all of the property values.
- `T = numerictype('double')` creates a double numerictype.
- `T = numerictype('single')` creates a single numerictype.
- `T = numerictype('boolean')` creates a Boolean numerictype.

The properties of the numerictype object are listed below. These properties are described in detail in “numerictype Object Properties” on page 9-17.

- `Bias` — Bias
- `DataType` — Data type category
- `DataTypeMode` — Data type and scaling mode
- `FixedExponent` — Fixed-point exponent
- `SlopeAdjustmentFactor` — Slope adjustment
- `FractionLength` — Fraction length of the stored integer value, in bits
- `Scaling` — Fixed-point scaling mode
- `Signed` — Signed or unsigned
- `Slope` — Slope
- `WordLength` — Word length of the stored integer value, in bits

## Examples

### Example 1

Type

```
T = numerictype
```

to create a default numerictype object.

```
T =
    DataType: Fixed
    Scaling: BinaryPoint
    Signed: true
    WordLength: 16
    FractionLength: 15
```

## Example 2

The following creates a signed numerictype object with a 32-bit word length and 30-bit fraction length.

```
T = numerictype(1, 32, 30)

T =
    DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: binary point scaling
    Signed: true
    WordLength: 32
    FractionLength: 30
```

## Example 3

If you omit the argument *f*, the scaling is unspecified.

```
T = numerictype(1, 32)

T =
    DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: unspecified scaling
    Signed: true
    WordLength: 32
```

## Example 4

If you omit the arguments *w* and *f*, the word length is automatically set to 16 bits and the scaling is unspecified.

# numerictype

---

```
T = numerictype(1)
```

```
T =
```

```
    DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: unspecified scaling  
        Signed: true  
    WordLength: 16
```

## Example 5

You can use property name/property value pairs to set `numerictype` properties when you create the object.

```
T = numerictype('Signed', true, 'DataTypeMode', ...  
    'Fixed-point: slope and bias', 'WordLength', 32, 'Slope', ...  
    2^-2, 'Bias', 4)
```

```
T =
```

```
    DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: slope and bias scaling  
        Signed: true  
    WordLength: 32  
        Slope: 0.25  
        Bias: 4
```

## See Also

`fi`, `fimath`, `fipref`, `quantizer`, “`numerictype` Object Properties” on page 9-17



<b>Purpose</b>	Number of underflows
<b>Syntax</b>	<code>nunderflows(a)</code> <code>nunderflows(q)</code>
<b>Description</b>	<p><code>nunderflows(a)</code> returns the number of underflows of <code>fi</code> object <code>a</code> since logging was turned on or since the last time the log was reset for the object.</p> <p>Turn on logging by setting the <code>fipref</code> property <code>LoggingMode</code> to <code>on</code>. Reset logging for a <code>fi</code> object using the <code>resetlog</code> function.</p> <p><code>nunderflows(q)</code> returns the accumulated number of underflows resulting from quantization operations performed by a quantizer object <code>q</code>.</p>
<b>See Also</b>	<code>maxlog</code> , <code>minlog</code> , <code>noverflows</code> , <code>resetlog</code>

# oct

---

**Purpose** Octal representation of stored integer of `fi` object

**Syntax** `oct(a)`

**Description** Fixed-point numbers can be represented as

$$\text{real-world value} = 2^{-\text{fraction length}} \times \text{stored integer}$$

or, equivalently,

$$\text{real-world value} = (\text{slope} \times \text{stored integer}) + \text{bias}$$

The stored integer is the raw binary number, in which the binary point is assumed to be at the far right of the word.

`oct(a)` returns the stored integer of `fi` object `a` in octal format as a string.

**Examples** The following code

```
a = fi([-1 1],1,8,7);  
oct(a)
```

returns

```
200 177
```

**See Also** `bin`, `dec`, `hex`, `int`

**Purpose** Find logical OR of array or scalar inputs

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB or reference page for more information.

# patch

---

**Purpose** Create patch graphics object

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB patch reference page for more information.

**Purpose** Create pseudocolor plot

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB `pcolor` reference page for more information.

# permute

---

**Purpose** Rearrange dimensions of multidimensional array

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB permute reference page for more information.

**Purpose** Create linear 2-D plot

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB `plot` reference page for more information.

# plot3

---

**Purpose** Create 3-D line plot

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB `plot3` reference page for more information.



**Purpose** Draw scatter plots

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB `plotmatrix` reference page for more information.

# plotyy

---

**Purpose** Create graph with y-axes on right and left sides

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB `plotyy` reference page for more information.

**Purpose** Matrix sum of `fi` objects

**Syntax** `plus(a,b)`

**Description** `plus(a,b)` is called for the syntax '`a + b`' when `a` or `b` is an object. `a + b` adds matrices `a` and `b`. `a` and `b` must have the same dimensions unless one is a scalar (a 1-by-1 matrix). A scalar can be added to anything.

`plus` does not support `fi` objects of data type `Boolean`.

**See Also** `minus`, `mtimes`, `times`, `uminus`

# polar

---

**Purpose** Plot polar coordinates

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB `polar` reference page for more information.

**Purpose** Multiply by a power of 2

**Syntax** `b = pow2(a, K)`

**Description** `b = pow2(a, K)` returns

$$b = a \times 2^K$$

where  $K$  is an integer and  $a$  and  $b$  are `fi` objects. If  $K$  is a non-integer, it will be rounded to `floor` before the calculation is performed. The scaling of  $a$  must be equivalent to binary point-only scaling; in other words, it must have a fractional slope of 1 and a bias of 0.

The syntax `b = pow2(a)` is not supported when  $a$  is a `fi` object.

$a$  can be real or complex. If  $a$  is complex, `pow2` operates on both the real and complex portions of  $a$ .

`pow2` does not support `fi` objects of data type `Boolean`.

**Examples** The following example shows the use of `pow2` with a complex `fi` object:

```
format long g
P = fipref('NumericTypeDisplay', 'short', 'FimathDisplay',...
'none');
a = fi(57 - 2i, 1, 16, 8)

a =

                57 -                2i
            s16,8

pow2(a, 2)

ans =

    127.99609375 -                8i
            s16,8
```

## pow2

---

### See Also

`bitshift`

**Purpose** Apply quantizer object to data

**Syntax**

```
y = quantize(q, x)
[y1,y2,...] = quantize(q,x1,x2,...)
```

**Description** `y = quantize(q, x)` uses the quantizer object `q` to quantize `x`. When `x` is a numeric array, each element of `x` is quantized. When `x` is a cell array, each numeric element of the cell array is quantized. When `x` is a structure, each numeric field of `x` is quantized. Nonnumeric elements or fields of `x` are left unchanged and `quantize` does not issue warnings for nonnumeric values.

`[y1,y2,...] = quantize(q,x1,x2,...)` is equivalent to

```
y1 = quantize(q,x1), y2 = quantize(q,x2),...
```

The quantizer object states

- `max` — Maximum value before quantizing
- `min` — Minimum value before quantizing
- `noverflows` — Number of overflows
- `nunderflows` — Number of underflows
- `noperations` — Number of quantization operations

are updated during the call to `quantize`, and running totals are kept until a call to `resetlog` is made.

**Examples** The following examples demonstrate using `quantize` to quantize data.

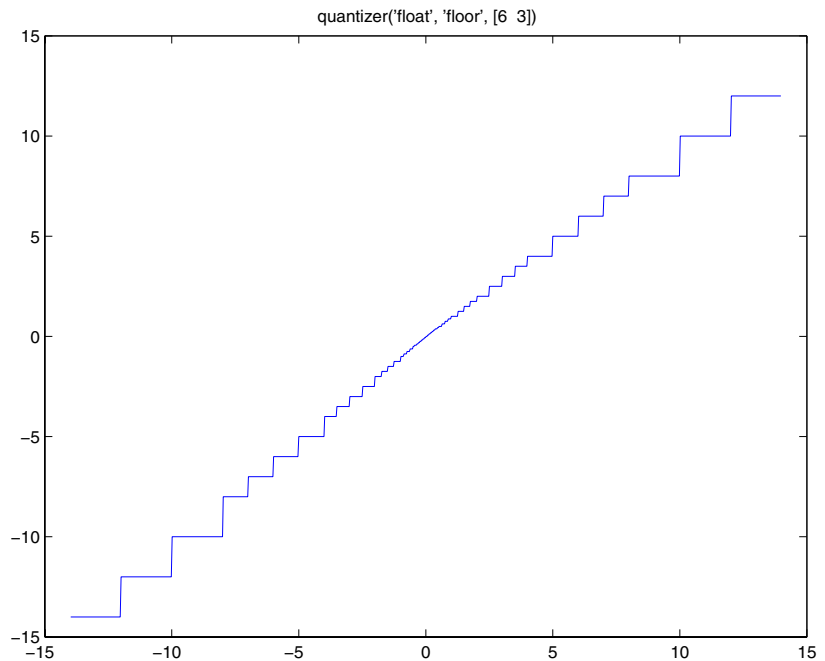
#### **Example 1 - Custom Precision Floating-Point**

The code listed here produces the plot shown in the following figure.

```
u=linspace(-15,15,1000);
q=quantizer([6 3],'float');
range(q)
```

# quantize

```
ans =  
  
-14    14  
y=quantize(q,u);  
plot(u,y);title(tostring(q))  
Warning: 68 overflows.
```



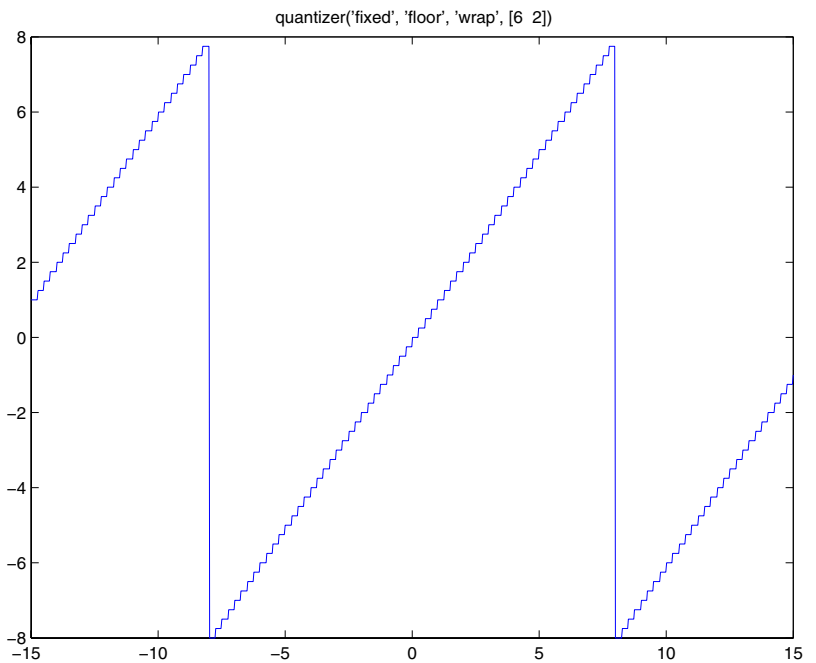
## Example 2 - Fixed-Point

The code listed here produces the plot shown in the following figure.

```
u=linspace(-15,15,1000);  
q=quantizer([6 2], 'wrap');
```



```
range(q)  
ans =  
    -8.0000    7.7500  
y=quantize(q,u);  
plot(u,y);title(tostring(q))  
Warning: 468 overflows.
```



**See Also**    quantizer, set

# quantizer

---

**Purpose** Construct quantizer object

**Syntax**

```
q = quantizer
q = quantizer('PropertyName1',PropertyValue1,...)
q = quantizer(PropertyValue1,PropertyValue2,...)
q = quantizer(struct)
q = quantizer(pn,pv)
```

**Description** `q = quantizer` creates a quantizer object with properties set to their default values.

`q = quantizer('PropertyName1',PropertyValue1,...)` uses property name/ property value pairs.

`q = quantizer(PropertyValue1,PropertyValue2,...)` creates a quantizer object with the listed property values. When two values conflict, `quantizer` sets the last property value in the list. Property values are unique; you can set the property names by specifying just the property values in the command.

`q = quantizer(struct)`, where `struct` is a structure whose field names are property names, sets the properties named in each field name with the values contained in the structure.

`q = quantizer(pn,pv)` sets the named properties specified in the cell array of strings `pn` to the corresponding values in the cell array `pv`.

The quantizer object property values are listed below. These properties are described in detail in “quantizer Object Properties” on page 9-21.

Property Name	Property Value	Description
mode	'double'	Double-precision mode. Override all other parameters.
	'float'	Custom-precision floating-point mode.

Property Name	Property Value	Description
	'fixed'	Signed fixed-point mode.
	'single'	Single-precision mode. Override all other parameters.
	'ufixed'	Unsigned fixed-point mode.
roundmode	'ceil'	Round toward positive infinity.
	'convergent'	Convergent rounding.
	'fix'	Round toward zero.
	'floor'	Round toward negative infinity.
	'nearest'	Round toward nearest.
overflowmode (fixed-point only)	'saturate'	Saturate on overflow.
	'wrap'	Wrap on overflow.
format	[wordlength exponentlength]	Format for fixed or ufixed mode.
	[wordlength exponentlength]	Format for float mode.

The default property values for a quantizer object are

```
mode = 'fixed';
roundmode = 'floor';
overflowmode = 'saturate';
format = [16 15];
```

# quantizer

---

Along with the preceding properties, quantizer objects have read-only states: `max`, `min`, `noverflows`, `nunderflows`, and `noperations`. They can be accessed through `quantizer/get` or `q.maxlog`, `q.minlog`, `q.noverflows`, `q.nunderflows`, and `q.noperations`, but they cannot be set. They are updated during the `quantizer/quantize` method, and are reset by the `resetlog` function.

The following table lists the read-only quantizer object states:

Property Name	Description
<code>max</code>	Maximum value before quantizing
<code>min</code>	Minimum value before quantizing
<code>noverflows</code>	Number of overflows
<code>nunderflows</code>	Number of underflows
<code>noperations</code>	Number of data points quantized

## Examples

The following example operations are equivalent.

Setting quantizer object properties by listing property values only in the command,

```
q = quantizer('fixed', 'ceil', 'saturate', [5 4])
```

Using a structure struct to set quantizer object properties,

```
struct.mode = 'fixed';  
struct.roundmode = 'ceil';  
struct.overflowmode = 'saturate';  
struct.format = [5 4];  
q = quantizer(struct);
```

Using property name and property value cell arrays `pn` and `pv` to set quantizer object properties,

```
pn = {'mode', 'roundmode', 'overflowmode', 'format'};  
pv = {'fixed', 'ceil', 'saturate', [5 4]};  
q = quantizer(pn, pv)
```

Using property name/property value pairs to configure a quantizer object,

```
q = quantizer('mode', 'fixed', 'roundmode', 'ceil', ...  
             'overflowmode', 'saturate', 'format', [5 4]);
```

## See Also

`fi`, `fimath`, `fipref`, `numerictype`, `quantize`, `set`, “quantizer Object Properties” on page 9-21

# quiver

---

**Purpose** Create quiver or velocity plot

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB `quiver` reference page for more information.

**Purpose** Create 3-D quiver or velocity plot

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB `quiver3` reference page for more information.

# randquant

---

**Purpose** Generate uniformly distributed, quantized random number using quantizer object

**Syntax**

```
randquant(q,n)
randquant(q,m,n)
randquant(q,m,n,p,...)
randquant(q,[m,n])
randquant(q,[m,n,p,...])
```

**Description** randquant(q,n) uses quantizer object q to generate an n-by-n matrix with random entries whose values cover the range of q when q is a fixed-point quantizer object. When q is a floating-point quantizer object, randquant populates the n-by-n array with values covering the range

-[square root of realmax(q)] to [square root of realmax(q)]

randquant(q,m,n) uses quantizer object q to generate an m-by-n matrix with random entries whose values cover the range of q when q is a fixed-point quantizer object. When q is a floating-point quantizer object, randquant populates the m-by-n array with values covering the range

-[square root of realmax(q)] to [square root of realmax(q)]

randquant(q,m,n,p,...) uses quantizer object q to generate an m-by-n-by-p-by ... matrix with random entries whose values cover the range of q when q is fixed-point quantizer object. When q is a floating-point quantizer object, randquant populates the matrix with values covering the range

-[square root of realmax(q)] to [square root of realmax(q)]

randquant(q,[m,n]) uses quantizer object q to generate an m-by-n matrix with random entries whose values cover the range of q when q is a fixed-point quantizer object. When q is a floating-point quantizer object, randquant populates the m-by-n array with values covering the range



-[square root of realmax(q)] to [square root of realmax(q)]

`randquant(q,[m,n,p,...])` uses quantizer object `q` to generate `p` `m`-by-`n` matrices containing random entries whose values cover the range of `q` when `q` is a fixed-point quantizer object. When `q` is a floating-point quantizer object, `randquant` populates the `m`-by-`n` arrays with values covering the range

-[square root of realmax(q)] to [square root of realmax(q)]

`randquant` produces pseudorandom numbers. The number sequence `randquant` generates during each call is determined by the state of the generator. Because MATLAB resets the random number generator state at startup, the sequence of random numbers generated by the function remains the same unless you change the state.

`randquant` works like `rand` in most respects, including the generator used, but it does not support the 'state' and 'seed' options available in `rand`.

## Examples

```
q=quantizer([4 3]);
rand('state',0)
randquant(q,3)
```

```
ans =
```

```
    0.7500   -0.1250   -0.2500
   -0.6250    0.6250   -1.0000
    0.1250    0.3750    0.5000
```

## See Also

`quantizer`, `range`, `realmax`

# range

---

**Purpose** Numerical range of fi or quantizer object

**Syntax**  
range(a)  
[min, max]= range(a)  
r = range(q)  
[min, max] = range(q)

**Description** range(a) returns a fi object with the minimum and maximum possible values of fi object a. All possible quantized real-world values of a are in the range returned. If a is a complex number, then all possible values of real(a) and imag(a) are in the range returned.

[min, max]= range(a) returns the minimum and maximum values of fi object a in separate output variables.

r = range(q) returns the two-element row vector  $r = [a \ b]$  such that for all real  $x$ ,  $y = \text{quantize}(q, x)$  returns  $y$  in the range  $a \leq y \leq b$ .

[min, max] = range(q) returns the minimum and maximum values of the range in separate output variables.

## Examples

```
q = quantizer('float',[6 3]);  
r = range(q)  
  
r =  
  
    -14    14  
q = quantizer('fixed',[4 2],'floor');  
[min,max] = range(q)  
  
min =  
  
    -2  
  
max =  
  
    1.7500
```

**Algorithm**

If  $q$  is a floating-point quantizer object,  $a = -\text{realmax}(q)$ ,  $b = \text{realmax}(q)$ .

If  $q$  is a signed fixed-point quantizer object (`datamode = 'fixed'`),

$$a = -\text{realmax}(q) - \text{eps}(q) = \frac{-2^{w-1}}{2^f}$$

$$b = \text{realmax}(q) = \frac{2^{w-1} - 1}{2^f}$$

If  $q$  is an unsigned fixed-point quantizer object (`datamode = 'ufixed'`),

$$a = 0$$

$$b = \text{realmax}(q) = \frac{2^w - 1}{2^f}$$

See `realmax` for more information.

**See Also**

`exponentmin`, `fractionlength`, `max`, `min`, `realmax`, `realmin`

# real

---

**Purpose**            Real part of complex number

**Description**      Refer to the MATLAB `real` reference page for more information.

**Purpose** Largest positive fixed-point value or quantized number

**Syntax** `realmax(a)`  
`realmax(q)`

**Description** `realmax(a)` is the largest real-world value that can be represented in the data type of fi object a. Anything larger overflows.

`realmax(q)` is the largest quantized number that can be represented where q is a quantizer object. Anything larger overflows.

**Examples**

```
q = quantizer('float',[6 3]);
x = realmax(q)

x =

    14
```

**Algorithm** If q is a floating-point quantizer object, the largest positive number, x, is

$$x = 2^{E_{max}} \cdot (2 - eps(q))$$

If q is a signed fixed-point quantizer object, the largest positive number, x, is

$$x = \frac{2^{w-1} - 1}{2^f}$$

If q is an unsigned fixed-point quantizer object (`datamode = 'ufixed'`), the largest positive number, x, is

$$x = \frac{2^w - 1}{2^f}$$

# realmax

---

## See Also

quantizer, realmin, exponentmin, fractionlength

**Purpose** Smallest positive normalized fixed-point value or quantized number

**Syntax** `realmin(a)`  
`realmin(q)`

**Description** `realmin(a)` is the smallest real-world value that can be represented in the data type of `fi` object `a`. Anything smaller underflows.

`realmin(q)` is the smallest positive normal quantized number where `q` is a quantizer object. Anything smaller than `x` underflows or is an IEEE “denormal” number.

**Examples**

```
q = quantizer('float',[6 3]);
realmin(q)

ans =

    0.2500
```

**Algorithm** If `q` is a floating-point quantizer object,  $x = 2^{E_{min}}$  where  $E_{min} = \text{exponentmin}(q)$  is the minimum exponent.

If `q` is a signed or unsigned fixed-point quantizer object,  $x = 2^{-f} = \epsilon$  where  $f$  is the fraction length.

**See Also** `exponentmin`, `fractionlength`, `realmax`

# repmat

---

**Purpose** Replicate and tile array

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB repmat reference page for more information.



<b>Purpose</b>	Change scaling of <code>fi</code> object
<b>Syntax</b>	<pre>b = rescale(a, fractionlength) b = rescale(a, slope, bias) b = rescale(a, slopeadjustmentfactor, fixedexponent, bias) b = rescale(a, ..., PropertyName, PropertyValue, ...)</pre>
<b>Description</b>	<p>The <code>rescale</code> function acts similarly to the <code>fi</code> copy function with the following exceptions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• The <code>fi</code> copy constructor preserves the real-world value, while <code>rescale</code> preserves the stored integer value.</li><li>• <code>rescale</code> does not allow the <code>Signed</code> and <code>WordLength</code> properties to be changed.</li></ul>
<b>Examples</b>	<p>In the following example, <code>fi</code> object <code>a</code> is rescaled to create <code>fi</code> object <code>b</code>. The real-world values of <code>a</code> and <code>b</code> are different, while their stored integer values are the same:</p> <pre>p = fipref('FimathDisplay','none',... 'NumericTypeDisplay','short'); a = fi(10, 1, 8, 3)  a =      10     s8,3  b = rescale(a, 1)  b =      40     s8,1</pre>

## rescale

---

```
stored_integer_a = a.int;  
stored_integer_b = b.int;  
isequal(stored_integer_a, stored_integer_b)
```

```
ans =
```

```
1
```

### See Also

fi

**Purpose**            Reset objects to initial conditions

**Syntax**            `reset(obj)`

**Description**        `reset(obj)` resets `fi`, `fimath`, `fipref`, or quantizer object `obj` to its initial conditions.

**See Also**            `resetlog`

# resetlog

---

<b>Purpose</b>	Clear log for fi or quantizer object
<b>Syntax</b>	resetlog(a) resetlog(q)
<b>Description</b>	resetlog(a) clears the log for fi object a. resetlog(q) clears the log for quantizer object q. Turn logging on or off by setting the fipref property LoggingMode.
<b>See Also</b>	fipref, maxlog, minlog, noperations, noverflows, nunderflows, reset

**Purpose** Reshape array

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB reshape reference page for more information.

# rgbplot

---

**Purpose** Plot colormap

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB `rgbplot` reference page for more information.

**Purpose** Create ribbon plot

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB ribbon reference page for more information.

## rose

---

**Purpose** Create angle histogram

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB rose reference page for more information.



**Purpose** Round input data using quantizer object without checking for overflow

**Syntax** `round(q,x)`

**Description** `round(q,x)` uses the `RoundMode` and `FractionLength` settings of `q` to round the numeric data `x`, but does not check for overflows during the operation. Compare to `quantize`.

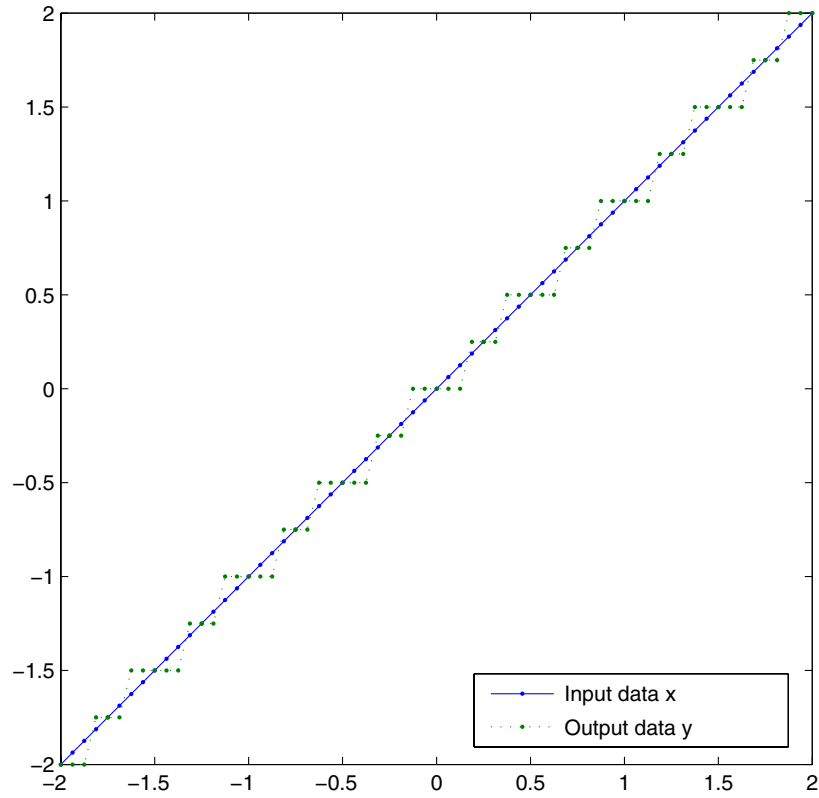
**Examples** Create a quantizer object and use it to quantize input data. The quantizer object applies its properties to the input data to return quantized output.

```
q = quantizer('fixed', 'convergent', 'wrap', [3 2]);  
x = (-2:eps(q)/4:2)';  
y = round(q,x);  
plot(x,[x,y],'.-'); axis square;
```

Applying quantizer object `q` to the data results in the staircase shape output plot shown here. Where the input data is linear, output `y` shows distinct quantization levels.

# round

---



**See Also** `quantize`, `quantizer`

<b>Purpose</b>	Save <code>fi</code> preferences for next MATLAB session
<b>Syntax</b>	<code>savefipref</code>
<b>Description</b>	<code>savefipref</code> saves the settings of the current <code>fipref</code> object for the next MATLAB session.
<b>See Also</b>	<code>fipref</code>

# scatter

---

**Purpose** Create scatter or bubble plot

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB scatter reference page for more information.

**Purpose** Create 3-D scatter or bubble plot

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB `scatter3` reference page for more information.

# sdec

---

**Purpose** Signed decimal representation of stored integer of `fi` object

**Syntax** `sdec(a)`

**Description** Fixed-point numbers can be represented as

$$\textit{real-world value} = 2^{-\textit{fraction length}} \times \textit{stored integer}$$

or, equivalently,

$$\textit{real-world value} = (\textit{slope} \times \textit{stored integer}) + \textit{bias}$$

The stored integer is the raw binary number, in which the binary point is assumed to be at the far right of the word.

`sdec(a)` returns the stored integer of `fi` object `a` in signed decimal format as a string.

**Examples** The code

```
a = fi([-1 1],1,8,7);  
sdec(a)
```

returns

```
-128    127
```

**See Also** `bin`, `dec`, `hex`, `int`, `oct`

**Purpose** Create semilogarithmic plot with logarithmic x-axis

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB `semilogx` reference page for more information.

# semilogy

---

**Purpose** Create semilogarithmic plot with logarithmic y-axis

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB `semilogy` reference page for more information.



**Purpose** Set or display property values for quantizer objects

**Syntax**

```
set(q, PropertyValue1, PropertyValue2,...)
set(q,s)
set(q,pn,pv)
set(q,'PropertyName1',PropertyValue1,'PropertyName2',
    PropertyValue2,...)
q.PropertyName = Value
s = set(q)
```

**Description** `set(q, PropertyValue1, PropertyValue2,...)` sets the properties of quantizer object `q`. If two property values conflict, the last value in the list is the one that is set.

`set(q,s)`, where `s` is a structure whose field names are object property names, sets the properties named in each field name with the values contained in the structure.

`set(q,pn,pv)` sets the named properties specified in the cell array of strings `pn` to the corresponding values in the cell array `pv`.

`set(q,'PropertyName1',PropertyValue1,'PropertyName2',PropertyValue2,...)` sets multiple property values with a single statement. Note that you can use property name/property value string pairs, structures, and property name/property value cell array pairs in the same call to `set`.

`q.PropertyName = Value` uses dot notation to set property `PropertyName` to `Value`.

`set(q)` displays the possible values for all properties of quantizer object `q`.

`s = set(q)` returns a structure containing the possible values for the properties of quantizer object `q`.

**See Also** `get`

# sign

---

**Purpose** Perform signum function on array

**Syntax** `c = sign(a)`

**Description** `c = sign(a)` returns an array `c` the same size as `a`, where each element of `c` is

- 1 if the corresponding element of `a` is greater than zero
- 0 if the corresponding element of `a` is zero
- -1 if the corresponding element of `a` is less than zero

The elements of `c` are of data type `int8`.

`sign` does not support complex `fi` inputs.

**Purpose** Single-precision floating-point real-world value of `fi` object

**Syntax** `single(a)`

**Description** Fixed-point numbers can be represented as

$$\textit{real-world value} = 2^{-\textit{fraction length}} \times \textit{stored integer}$$

or, equivalently,

$$\textit{real-world value} = (\textit{slope} \times \textit{stored integer}) + \textit{bias}$$

`single(a)` returns the real-world value of a `fi` object in single-precision floating point.

**See Also** `double`

# size

---

**Purpose**      Array dimensions

**Description**      Refer to the MATLAB `size` reference page for more information.

**Purpose** Create volumetric slice plot

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB `slice` reference page for more information.

# spy

---

**Purpose** Visualize sparsity pattern

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB spy reference page for more information.

**Purpose** Remove singleton dimensions

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB `squeeze` reference page for more information.

# stairs

---

**Purpose** Create staircase graph

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB stairs reference page for more information.



**Purpose** Plot discrete sequence data

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB `stem` reference page for more information.

## stem3

---

**Purpose** Plot 3-D discrete sequence data

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB `stem3` reference page for more information.

**Purpose** Create 3-D stream ribbon plot

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB streamribbon reference page for more information.

# streamslice

---

**Purpose** Draw streamlines in slice planes

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB `streamslice` reference page for more information.

**Purpose** Create 3-D stream tube plot

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB streamtube reference page for more information.

# stripscaling

---

**Purpose**            Stored integer of fi object

**Syntax**            I = stripscaling(a)

**Description**        I = stripscaling(a) returns the stored integer of a as a fi object with zero bias and the same word length and sign as a.

**Purpose** Subtract two objects using `fimath` object

**Syntax** `c = F.sub(a,b)`

**Description** `c = F.sub(a,b)` subtracts objects `a` and `b` using `fimath` object `F`. This is helpful in cases when you want to override the `fimath` objects of `a` and `b`, or if the `fimath` objects of `a` and `b` are different.

`a` and `b` must have the same dimensions unless one is a scalar. If either `a` or `b` is scalar, then `c` has the dimensions of the nonscalar object.

If either `a` or `b` is a `fi` object, and the other is a MATLAB built-in numeric type, then the built-in object is cast to the word length of the `fi` object, preserving best-precision fraction length.

**Examples** In this example, `c` is the 32-bit difference of `a` and `b` with fraction length 16.

```
a = fi(pi);
b = fi(exp(1));
F = fimath('SumMode','SpecifyPrecision',...
'SumWordLength',32,'SumFractionLength',16);
c = F.sub(a, b)
```

```
c =
```

```
0.4233
```

```
DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: binary point scaling
Signed: true
WordLength: 32
FractionLength: 16
```

```
RoundMode: nearest
OverflowMode: saturate
ProductMode: FullPrecision
MaxProductWordLength: 128
```

# sub

---

```
SumMode: SpecifyPrecision
SumWordLength: 32
SumFractionLength: 16
CastBeforeSum: true
```

## Algorithm

`c = F.sub(a,b)` is equivalent to

```
a.fimath = F;
b.fimath = F;
c = a - b;
```

except that the `fimath` properties of `a` and `b` are not modified when you use the functional form.

## See Also

`add`, `divide`, `fi`, `fimath`, `mpy`, `numericType`



**Purpose** Subscripted assignment

**Syntax**

```
a(I) = b
a(I,J) = b
a(I,:) = b
a(:,I) = b
a(I,J,K,...) = b
a = subsasgn(a,S,b)
```

**Description**

$a(I) = b$  assigns the values of  $b$  into the elements of  $a$  specified by the subscript vector  $I$ .  $b$  must have the same number of elements as  $I$  or be a scalar.

$a(I,J) = b$  assigns the values of  $b$  into the elements of the rectangular submatrix of  $a$  specified by the subscript vectors  $I$  and  $J$ .  $b$  must have  $\text{LENGTH}(I)$  rows and  $\text{LENGTH}(J)$  columns.

A colon used as a subscript, as in  $a(I,:) = b$  or  $a(:,I) = b$  indicates the entire column or row.

For multidimensional arrays,  $a(I,J,K,\dots) = b$  assigns  $b$  to the specified elements of  $a$ .  $b$  must be  $\text{length}(I)$ -by- $\text{length}(J)$ -by- $\text{length}(K)$ -... or be shiftable to that size by adding or removing singleton dimensions.

$a = \text{subsasgn}(a,S,b)$  is called for the syntax  $a(i)=b$ ,  $a\{i\}=b$ , or  $a.i=b$  when  $a$  is an object.  $S$  is a structure array with the fields

- `type` — String containing '()' , '{ }' , or '.' specifying the subscript type
- `subs` — Cell array or string containing the actual subscripts

For instance, the syntax  $a(1:2,:) = b$  calls  $a = \text{subsasgn}(a,S,b)$  where  $S$  is a 1-by-1 structure with  $S.type = '()'$  and  $S.subs = \{1:2, ':'\}$ . A colon used as a subscript is passed as the string ':'.

## Examples

For `fi` objects `a` and `b`, there is a difference between

```
a = b
```

and

```
a(:) = b
```

In the first case, `a = b` replaces `a` with `b`, and `a` assumes the value, `numericType` object, and `fi` object of `b`.

In the second case, `a(:) = b` assigns the value of `b` into `a` while keeping the `numericType` object of `a`. You can use this to cast a value with one `numericType` object into another `numericType` object.

For example, cast a 16-bit number into an 8-bit number:

```
a = fi(0, 1, 8, 7)
```

```
a =
```

```
0
```

```
      DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: binary point scaling  
      Signed: true  
      WordLength: 8  
      FractionLength: 7
```

```
b = fi(pi/4, 1, 16, 15)
```

```
b =
```

```
0.7854
```

```
      DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: binary point scaling  
      Signed: true  
      WordLength: 16  
      FractionLength: 15
```

```
a(:) = b
```

```
a =
```

```
0.7891
```

```
        DataTypeMode: Fixed-point: binary point scaling  
          Signed: true  
        WordLength: 8  
    FractionLength: 7
```

In this kind of assignment operation, the `fimath` objects of `a` and `b` can be different. A common use for this is when casting the result of an accumulation to an output data type, where the two have different rounding and overflow modes. Another common use is in a series of multiply/accumulate operations. For example,

```
for k = 1:n  
    acc(1) = acc + b * x(k)  
end
```

## See Also

[subsref](#)

# subsref

---

**Purpose** Subscripted reference

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB subsref reference page for more information.

---

<b>Purpose</b>	Sum of array elements
<b>Syntax</b>	<code>b = sum(a)</code> <code>b = sum(a, dim)</code>
<b>Description</b>	<p><code>b = sum(a)</code> returns the sum along different dimensions of the <code>fi</code> array <code>a</code>.</p> <p>If <code>a</code> is a vector, <code>sum(a)</code> returns the sum of the elements.</p> <p>If <code>a</code> is a matrix, <code>sum(a)</code> treats the columns of <code>a</code> as vectors, returning a row vector of the sums of each column.</p> <p>If <code>a</code> is a multidimensional array, <code>sum(a)</code> treats the values along the first nonsingleton dimension as vectors, returning an array of row vectors.</p> <p><code>b = sum(a, dim)</code> sums along the dimension <code>dim</code> of <code>a</code>.</p> <p>The <code>fimath</code> object is used in the calculation of the sum. If <code>SumMode</code> is <code>FullPrecision</code>, <code>KeepLSB</code>, or <code>KeepMSB</code>, then the number of integer bits of growth for <code>sum(a)</code> is <code>ceil(log2(length(a)))</code>.</p> <p><code>sum</code> does not support <code>fi</code> objects of data type <code>Boolean</code>.</p>
<b>See Also</b>	<code>add</code> , <code>divide</code> , <code>fi</code> , <code>fimath</code> , <code>mpy</code> , <code>numericType</code> , <code>sub</code>

# surf

---

**Purpose** Create 3-D shaded surface plot

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB `surf` reference page for more information.

**Purpose** Create 3-D shaded surface plot with contour plot

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB `surf` reference page for more information.

# surf1

---

**Purpose** Create surface plot with colormap-based lighting

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB `surf1` reference page for more information.



**Purpose** Compute and display 3-D surface normals

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB `surfnorm` reference page for more information.

# text

---

**Purpose** Create text object in current axes

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB `text` reference page for more information.

**Purpose** Element-by-element multiplication of `fi` objects

**Syntax** `times(a,b)`

**Description** `times(a,b)` is called for the syntax '`a .* b`' when `a` or `b` is an object. `a.*b` denotes element-by-element multiplication. `a` and `b` must have the same dimensions unless one is a scalar. A scalar can be multiplied into anything.

`times` does not support `fi` objects of data type `Boolean`.

**See Also** `plus`, `minus`, `mtimes`, `uminus`

# toeplitz

---

**Purpose** Create Toeplitz matrix

**Syntax** `t = toeplitz(a, b)`  
`t = toeplitz(b)`

**Description** `t = toeplitz(a, b)` returns a nonsymmetric Toeplitz matrix having `a` as its first column and `b` as its first row. `b` is cast to the `numericType` of `a`.

`t = toeplitz(b)` returns the symmetric or Hermitian Toeplitz matrix formed from vector `b`, where `b` is the first row of the matrix.

The `numericType` and `fi` objects of the leftmost input that is a `fi` object are applied to the output `t`.

**Purpose** Convert quantizer object to string

**Syntax** `s = tostring(q)`

**Description** `s = tostring(q)` converts quantizer object `q` to a string `s`. After converting `q` to a string, the function `eval(s)` can use `s` to create a quantizer object with the same properties as `q`.

**See Also** `quantizer`

# transpose

---

**Purpose** Transpose operation

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB arithmetic operators reference page for more information.

**Purpose** Plot picture of tree

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB treeplot reference page for more information.

# tril

---

**Purpose** Lower triangular part of matrix

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB `tril` reference page for more information.



**Purpose** Create triangular mesh plot

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB `trimesh` reference page for more information.

# triplot

---

**Purpose** Create 2-D triangular plot

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB `triplot` reference page for more information.

**Purpose** Create triangular surface plot

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB `trisurf` reference page for more information.

# triu

---

**Purpose** Upper triangular part of matrix

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB `triu` reference page for more information.

**Purpose** Stored integer value of fi object as built-in uint8

**Syntax** uint8(a)

**Description** Fixed-point numbers can be represented as

$$real\text{-}world\ value = 2^{-fraction\ length} \times stored\ integer$$

or, equivalently,

$$real\text{-}world\ value = (slope \times stored\ integer) + bias$$

The stored integer is the raw binary number, in which the binary point is assumed to be at the far right of the word.

uint8(a) returns the stored integer value of fi object a as a built-in uint8. If the stored integer word length is too big for a uint8, or if the stored integer is signed, the returned value saturates to a uint8.

**See Also** int, int8, int16, int32, uint16, uint32

# uint16

---

**Purpose** Stored integer value of `fi` object as built-in `uint16`

**Syntax** `uint16(a)`

**Description** Fixed-point numbers can be represented as

$$\textit{real-world value} = 2^{-\textit{fraction length}} \times \textit{stored integer}$$

or, equivalently,

$$\textit{real-world value} = (\textit{slope} \times \textit{stored integer}) + \textit{bias}$$

The stored integer is the raw binary number, in which the binary point is assumed to be at the far right of the word.

`uint16(a)` returns the stored integer value of `fi` object `a` as a built-in `uint16`. If the stored integer word length is too big for a `uint16`, or if the stored integer is signed, the returned value saturates to a `uint16`.

**See Also** `int`, `int8`, `int16`, `int32`, `uint8`, `uint32`

**Purpose** Stored integer value of `fi` object as built-in `uint32`

**Syntax** `uint32(a)`

**Description** Fixed-point numbers can be represented as

$$\textit{real-world value} = 2^{-\textit{fraction length}} \times \textit{stored integer}$$

or, equivalently,

$$\textit{real-world value} = (\textit{slope} \times \textit{stored integer}) + \textit{bias}$$

The stored integer is the raw binary number, in which the binary point is assumed to be at the far right of the word.

`uint32(a)` returns the stored integer value of `fi` object `a` as a built-in `uint32`. If the stored integer word length is too big for a `uint32`, or if the stored integer is signed, the returned value saturates to a `uint32`.

**See Also** `int`, `int8`, `int16`, `int32`, `uint8`, `uint16`

# uminus

---

**Purpose** Negate elements of `fi` object array

**Syntax** `uminus(a)`

**Description** `uminus(a)` is called for the syntax `'-a'` when `a` is an object. `-a` negates the elements of `a`.

`uminus` does not support `fi` objects of data type `Boolean`.

**See Also** `plus`, `minus`, `mtimes`, `times`



**Purpose**           Unary plus

**Description**       Refer to the MATLAB arithmetic operators reference page for more information.

# upperbound

---

**Purpose** Upper bound of range of `fi` object

**Syntax** `upperbound(a)`

**Description** `upperbound(a)` returns the upper bound of the range of `fi` object `a`. If `L = lowerbound(a)` and `U = upperbound(a)`, then `[L,U] = range(a)`.

**See Also** `lowerbound`, `range`

---

<b>Purpose</b>	Vertically concatenate multiple <code>fi</code> objects
<b>Syntax</b>	<code>c = vertcat(a,b,...)</code> <code>[a; b; ...]</code> <code>[a;b]</code>
<b>Description</b>	<p><code>c = vertcat(a,b,...)</code> is called for the syntax <code>[a; b; ...]</code> when any of <code>a</code>, <code>b</code>, <code>...</code>, is a <code>fi</code> object.</p> <p><code>[a;b]</code> is the vertical concatenation of matrices <code>a</code> and <code>b</code>. <code>a</code> and <code>b</code> must have the same number of columns. Any number of matrices can be concatenated within one pair of brackets. N-D arrays are vertically concatenated along the first dimension. The remaining dimensions must match.</p> <p>Horizontal and vertical concatenation can be combined, as in <code>[1 2;3 4]</code>.</p> <p><code>[a b; c]</code> is allowed if the number of rows of <code>a</code> equals the number of rows of <code>b</code>, and if the number of columns of <code>a</code> plus the number of columns of <code>b</code> equals the number of columns of <code>c</code>.</p> <p>The matrices in a concatenation expression can themselves be formed via a concatenation, as in <code>[a b;[c d]]</code>.</p>
	<hr/> <p><b>Note</b> The <code>fi</code>math and <code>numeric</code>type objects of a concatenated matrix of <code>fi</code> objects <code>c</code> are taken from the leftmost <code>fi</code> object in the list <code>(a,b,...)</code>.</p> <hr/>
<b>See Also</b>	<code>horzcat</code>

# voronoi

---

**Purpose** Create Voronoi diagram

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB voronoi reference page for more information.

**Purpose** Create n-D Voronoi diagram

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB voronoin reference page for more information.

# waterfall

---

**Purpose** Create waterfall plot

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB waterfall reference page for more information.

**Purpose** Word length of quantizer object

**Syntax** `wordlength(q)`

**Description** `wordlength(q)` returns the word length of the quantizer object `q`.

**Examples**

```
q = quantizer([16 15]);  
wordlength(q)  
  
ans =  
  
    16
```

**See Also** `fi`, `fractionlength`, `exponentlength`, `numerictype`, `quantizer`

# xlim

---

**Purpose** Set or query x-axis limits

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB `xlim` reference page for more information.



**Purpose** Set or query y-axis limits

**Description** Refer to the MATLAB `ylim` reference page for more information.

# zlim

---

**Purpose**            e Set or query z-axis limits

**Description**      Refer to the MATLAB `zlim` reference page for more information.

This glossary defines terms related to fixed-point data types and numbers. These terms may appear in some or all of the documents that describe products from The MathWorks that have fixed-point support.

## **arithmetic shift**

Shift of the bits of a binary word for which the sign bit is recycled for each bit shift to the right. A zero is incorporated into the least significant bit of the word for each bit shift to the left. In the absence of overflows, each arithmetic shift to the right is equivalent to a division by 2, and each arithmetic shift to the left is equivalent to a multiplication by 2.

*See also* binary point, binary word, bit, logical shift, most significant bit

## **bias**

Part of the numerical representation used to interpret a fixed-point number. Along with the slope, the bias forms the scaling of the number. Fixed-point numbers can be represented as

$$\text{real-world value} = (\text{slope} \times \text{integer}) + \text{bias}$$

where the slope can be expressed as

$$\text{slope} = \text{fractional slope} \times 2^{\text{exponent}}$$

*See also* fixed-point representation, fractional slope, integer, scaling, slope, [Slope Bias]

## **binary number**

Value represented in a system of numbers that has two as its base and that uses 1's and 0's (bits) for its notation.

*See also* bit

**binary point**

Symbol in the shape of a period that separates the integer and fractional parts of a binary number. Bits to the left of the binary point are integer bits and/or sign bits, and bits to the right of the binary point are fractional bits.

*See also* binary number, bit, fraction, integer, radix point

**binary point-only scaling**

Scaling of a binary number that results from shifting the binary point of the number right or left, and which therefore can only occur by powers of two.

*See also* binary number, binary point, scaling

**binary word**

Fixed-length sequence of bits (1's and 0's). In digital hardware, numbers are stored in binary words. The way in which hardware components or software functions interpret this sequence of 1's and 0's is described by a data type.

*See also* bit, data type, word

**bit**

Smallest unit of information in computer software or hardware. A bit can have the value 0 or 1.

**ceiling (round toward)**

Rounding mode that rounds to the closest representable number in the direction of positive infinity. This is equivalent to the `ceil` mode in Fixed-Point Toolbox.

*See also* convergent rounding, floor (round toward), nearest (round toward), rounding, truncation, zero (round toward)

**contiguous binary point**

Binary point that occurs within the word length of a data type. For example, if a data type has four bits, its contiguous binary point must be understood to occur at one of the following five positions:

.0000  
0.000  
00.00  
000.0  
0000.

*See also* data type, noncontiguous binary point, word length

**convergent rounding**

Rounding mode that rounds to the nearest allowable quantized value. Numbers that are exactly halfway between the two nearest allowable quantized values are rounded up only if the least significant bit (after rounding) would be set to 0.

*See also* ceiling (round toward), floor (round toward), nearest (round toward), rounding, truncation, zero (round toward)

**data type**

Set of characteristics that define a group of values. A fixed-point data type is defined by its word length, its fraction length, and whether it is signed or unsigned. A floating-point data type is defined by its word length and whether it is signed or unsigned.

*See also* fixed-point representation, floating-point representation, fraction length, word length

**data type override**

Parameter in the Fixed-Point Settings interface that allows you to set the output data type and scaling of fixed-point blocks on a system or subsystem level.

*See also* data type, scaling

**exponent**

Part of the numerical representation used to express a floating-point or fixed-point number.

1. Floating-point numbers are typically represented as

$$\text{real-world value} = \text{mantissa} \times 2^{\text{exponent}}$$

2. Fixed-point numbers can be represented as

$$\text{real-world value} = (\text{slope} \times \text{integer}) + \text{bias}$$

where the slope can be expressed as

$$\text{slope} = \text{fractional slope} \times 2^{\text{exponent}}$$

The exponent of a fixed-point number is equal to the negative of the fraction length:

$$\text{exponent} = -1 \times \text{fraction length}$$

*See also* bias, fixed-point representation, floating-point representation, fraction length, fractional slope, integer, mantissa, slope

**fixed-point representation**

Method for representing numerical values and data types that have a set range and precision.

1. Fixed-point numbers can be represented as

$$\text{real-world value} = (\text{slope} \times \text{integer}) + \text{bias}$$

where the slope can be expressed as

$$\text{slope} = \text{fractional slope} \times 2^{\text{exponent}}$$

The slope and the bias together represent the scaling of the fixed-point number.

2. Fixed-point data types can be defined by their word length, their fraction length, and whether they are signed or unsigned.

*See also* bias, data type, exponent, fraction length, fractional slope, integer, precision, range, scaling, slope, word length

### **floating-point representation**

Method for representing numerical values and data types that can have changing range and precision.

1. Floating-point numbers can be represented as

$$\text{real-world value} = \text{mantissa} \times 2^{\text{exponent}}$$

2. Floating-point data types are defined by their word length.

*See also* data type, exponent, mantissa, precision, range, word length

### **floor (round toward)**

Rounding mode that rounds to the closest representable number in the direction of negative infinity.

*See also* ceiling (round toward), convergent rounding, nearest (round toward), rounding, truncation, zero (round toward)

### **fraction**

Part of a fixed-point number represented by the bits to the right of the binary point. The fraction represents numbers that are less than one.

*See also* binary point, bit, fixed-point representation

### **fraction length**

Number of bits to the right of the binary point in a fixed-point representation of a number.

*See also* binary point, bit, fixed-point representation, fraction

**fractional slope**

Part of the numerical representation used to express a fixed-point number. Fixed-point numbers can be represented as

$$\text{real-world value} = (\text{slope} \times \text{integer}) + \text{bias}$$

where the slope can be expressed as

$$\text{slope} = \text{fractional slope} \times 2^{\text{exponent}}$$

The term *slope adjustment* is sometimes used as a synonym for fractional slope.

*See also* bias, exponent, fixed-point representation, integer, slope

**guard bits**

Extra bits in either a hardware register or software simulation that are added to the high end of a binary word to ensure that no information is lost in case of overflow.

*See also* binary word, bit, overflow

**integer**

1. Part of a fixed-point number represented by the bits to the left of the binary point. The integer represents numbers that are greater than or equal to one.

2. Also called the "stored integer." The raw binary number, in which the binary point is assumed to be at the far right of the word. The integer is part of the numerical representation used to express a fixed-point number. Fixed-point numbers can be represented as

$$\text{real-world value} = 2^{-\text{fraction length}} \times \text{integer}$$

or

$$\text{real-world value} = (\text{slope} \times \text{integer}) + \text{bias}$$

where the slope can be expressed as



$$\text{slope} = \text{fractional slope} \times 2^{\text{exponent}}$$

*See also* bias, fixed-point representation, fractional slope, integer, real-world value, slope

**integer length**

Number of bits to the left of the binary point in a fixed-point representation of a number.

*See also* binary point, bit, fixed-point representation, fraction length, integer

**least significant bit (LSB)**

Bit in a binary word that can represent the smallest value. The LSB is the rightmost bit in a big-endian-ordered binary word. The weight of the LSB is related to the fraction length according to

$$\text{weight of LSB} = 2^{-\text{fraction length}}$$

*See also* big-endian, binary word, bit, most significant bit

**logical shift**

Shift of the bits of a binary word, for which a zero is incorporated into the most significant bit for each bit shift to the right and into the least significant bit for each bit shift to the left.

*See also* arithmetic shift, binary point, binary word, bit, most significant bit

**mantissa**

Part of the numerical representation used to express a floating-point number. Floating-point numbers are typically represented as

$$\text{real-world value} = \text{mantissa} \times 2^{\text{exponent}}$$

*See also* exponent, floating-point representation

**most significant bit (MSB)**

Bit in a binary word that can represent the largest value. The MSB is the leftmost bit in a big-endian-ordered binary word.

*See also* binary word, bit, least significant bit

**nearest (round toward)**

Rounding mode that rounds to the closest representable number, with the exact midpoint rounded to the closest representable number in the direction of positive infinity. This is equivalent to the nearest mode in Fixed-Point Toolbox.

*See also* ceiling (round toward), convergent rounding, floor (round toward), rounding, truncation, zero (round toward)

**noncontiguous binary point**

Binary point that is understood to fall outside the word length of a data type. For example, the binary point for the following 4-bit word is understood to occur two bits to the right of the word length,

0000\_.\_.

thereby giving the bits of the word the following potential values:

$2^5 2^4 2^3 2^2$ \_.\_.

*See also* binary point, data type, word length

**one's complement representation**

Representation of signed fixed-point numbers. Negating a binary number in one's complement requires a bitwise complement. That is, all 0's are flipped to 1's and all 1's are flipped to 0's. In one's complement notation there are two ways to represent zero. A binary word of all 0's represents "positive" zero, while a binary word of all 1's represents "negative" zero.

*See also* binary number, binary word, sign/magnitude representation, signed fixed-point, two's complement representation

**overflow**

Situation that occurs when the magnitude of a calculation result is too large for the range of the data type being used. In many cases you can choose to either saturate or wrap overflows.

*See also* saturation, wrapping

**padding**

Extending the least significant bit of a binary word with one or more zeros.

See also least significant bit

**precision**

1. Measure of the smallest numerical interval that a fixed-point data type and scaling can represent, determined by the value of the number's least significant bit. The precision is given by the slope, or the number of fractional bits. The term *resolution* is sometimes used as a synonym for this definition.

2. Measure of the difference between a real-world numerical value and the value of its quantized representation. This is sometimes called quantization error or quantization noise.

*See also* data type, fraction, least significant bit, quantization, quantization error, range, slope

**Q format**

Representation used by Texas Instruments to encode signed two's complement fixed-point data types. This fixed-point notation takes the form

$$Qm.n$$

where

- *Q* indicates that the number is in Q format.
- *m* is the number of bits used to designate the two's complement integer part of the number.

- $n$  is the number of bits used to designate the two's complement fractional part of the number, or the number of bits to the right of the binary point.

In Q format notation, the most significant bit is assumed to be the sign bit.

*See also* binary point, bit, data type, fixed-point representation, fraction, integer, two's complement

**quantization**

Representation of a value by a data type that has too few bits to represent it exactly.

*See also* bit, data type, quantization error

**quantization error**

Error introduced when a value is represented by a data type that has too few bits to represent it exactly, or when a value is converted from one data type to a shorter data type. Quantization error is also called quantization noise.

*See also* bit, data type, quantization

**radix point**

Symbol in the shape of a period that separates the integer and fractional parts of a number in any base system. Bits to the left of the radix point are integer and/or sign bits, and bits to the right of the radix point are fraction bits.

*See also* binary point, bit, fraction, integer, sign bit

**range**

Span of numbers that a certain data type can represent.

*See also* data type, precision

**real-world value**

Stored integer value with fixed-point scaling applied. Fixed-point numbers can be represented as

$$\text{real-world value} = 2^{-\text{fraction length}} \times \text{integer}$$

or

$$\text{real-world value} = (\text{slope} \times \text{integer}) + \text{bias}$$

where the slope can be expressed as

$$\text{slope} = \text{fractional slope} \times 2^{\text{exponent}}$$

*See also* integer

**resolution**

*See* **precision**

**rounding**

Limiting the number of bits required to express a number. One or more least significant bits are dropped, resulting in a loss of precision. Rounding is necessary when a value cannot be expressed exactly by the number of bits designated to represent it.

*See also* bit, ceiling (round toward), convergent rounding, floor (round toward), least significant bit, nearest (round toward), precision, truncation, zero (round toward)

**saturation**

Method of handling numeric overflow that represents positive overflows as the largest positive number in the range of the data type being used, and negative overflows as the largest negative number in the range.

*See also* overflow, wrapping

**scaled double**

A double data type that retains fixed-point scaling information. For example, in Simulink and Fixed-Point Toolbox you can use data type override to convert your fixed-point data types to scaled doubles. You can then simulate to determine the ideal floating-point behavior of your system. After you gather that information you can turn data type override off to return to fixed-point data types, and your quantities still have their original scaling information because it was held in the scaled double data types.

**scaling**

1. Format used for a fixed-point number of a given word length and signedness. The slope and bias together form the scaling of a fixed-point number.
2. Changing the slope and/or bias of a fixed-point number without changing the stored integer.

*See also* bias, fixed-point representation, integer, slope

**shift**

Movement of the bits of a binary word either toward the most significant bit ("to the left") or toward the least significant bit ("to the right"). Shifts to the right can be either logical, where the spaces emptied at the front of the word with each shift are filled in with zeros, or arithmetic, where the word is sign extended as it is shifted to the right.

*See also* arithmetic shift, logical shift, sign extension

**sign bit**

Bit (or bits) in a signed binary number that indicates whether the number is positive or negative.

*See also* binary number, bit

**sign extension**

Addition of bits that have the value of the most significant bit to the high end of a two's complement number. Sign extension does not change the value of the binary number.

*See also* binary number, guard bits, most significant bit, two's complement representation, word

**sign/magnitude representation**

Representation of signed fixed-point or floating-point numbers. In sign/magnitude representation, one bit of a binary word is always the dedicated sign bit, while the remaining bits of the word encode the magnitude of the number. Negation using sign/magnitude representation consists of flipping the sign bit from 0 (positive) to 1 (negative), or from 1 to 0.

*See also* binary word, bit, fixed-point representation, floating-point representation, one's complement representation, sign bit, signed fixed-point, two's complement representation

**signed fixed-point**

Fixed-point number or data type that can represent both positive and negative numbers.

*See also* data type, fixed-point representation, unsigned fixed-point

**slope**

Part of the numerical representation used to express a fixed-point number. Along with the bias, the slope forms the scaling of a fixed-point number. Fixed-point numbers can be represented as

$$\text{real-world value} = (\text{slope} \times \text{integer}) + \text{bias}$$

where the slope can be expressed as

$$\text{slope} = \text{fractional slope} \times 2^{\text{exponent}}$$

*See also* bias, fixed-point representation, fractional slope, integer, scaling, [Slope Bias]

**slope adjustment**

*See* fractional slope

**[Slope Bias]**

Representation used to define the scaling of a fixed-point number.

*See also* bias, scaling, slope

**stored integer**

*See* integer

**trivial scaling**

Scaling that results in the real-world value of a number being simply equal to its stored integer value:

$$\text{real-world value} = \text{integer}$$

In [Slope Bias] representation, fixed-point numbers can be represented as

$$\text{real-world value} = (\text{slope} \times \text{integer}) + \text{bias}$$

In the trivial case, slope = 1 and bias = 0.

In terms of binary point-only scaling, the binary point is to the right of the least significant bit for trivial scaling, meaning that the fraction length is zero:

$$\text{real-world value} = \text{integer} \times 2^{-\text{fraction length}} = \text{integer} \times 2^0$$

Scaling is always trivial for pure integers, such as int8, and also for the true floating-point types single and double.

*See also* bias, binary point, binary point-only scaling, fixed-point representation, fraction length, integer, least significant bit, scaling, slope, [Slope Bias]

**truncation**

Rounding mode that drops one or more least significant bits from a number.

*See also* ceiling (round toward), convergent rounding, floor (round toward), nearest (round toward), rounding, zero (round toward)



**two's complement representation**

Common representation of signed fixed-point numbers. Negation using signed two's complement representation consists of a translation into one's complement followed by the binary addition of a one.

*See also* binary word, one's complement representation, sign/magnitude representation, signed fixed-point

**unsigned fixed-point**

Fixed-point number or data type that can only represent numbers greater than or equal to zero.

*See also* data type, fixed-point representation, signed fixed-point

**word**

Fixed-length sequence of binary digits (1's and 0's). In digital hardware, numbers are stored in words. The way hardware components or software functions interpret this sequence of 1's and 0's is described by a data type.

*See also* binary word, data type

**word length**

Number of bits in a binary word or data type.

*See also* binary word, bit, data type

**wrapping**

Method of handling overflow. Wrapping uses modulo arithmetic to cast a number that falls outside of the representable range the data type being used back into the representable range.

*See also* data type, overflow, range, saturation

**zero (round toward)**

Rounding mode that rounds to the closest representable number in the direction of zero. This is equivalent to the `fix` mode in Fixed-Point Toolbox.

*See also* ceiling (round toward), convergent rounding, floor (round toward), nearest (round toward), rounding, truncation



## A

- abs function 11-2
- add function 11-5
- all function 11-7
- and function 11-8
- ANSI C
  - compared with `fi` objects 2-20
- any function 11-9
- area function 11-10
- arithmetic
  - fixed-point 4-9
  - with [Slope Bias] signals 4-13
- arithmetic operations
  - fixed-point 2-8

## B

- bar function 11-11
- barh function 11-12
- Bias property 9-17
- bin function 11-13
- bin property 9-2
- bin2num function 11-14
- binary conversions 2-23
- bitand function 11-16
- bitcmp function 11-17
- bitget function 11-18
- bitor function 11-19
- bitset function 11-20
- bitshift function 11-21
- bitxor function 11-23
- buffer function 11-24

## C

- CastBeforeSum property 9-6
- casts
  - fixed-point 2-17
- clabel function 11-25
- comet function 11-26

- comet3 function 11-27
- compass function 11-28
- complex function 11-29
- complex multiplication
  - fixed-point 2-11
- coneplot function 11-30
- conj function 11-31
- contour function 11-32
- contour3 function 11-33
- contourc function 11-34
- contourf function 11-35
- convergent function 11-36
- copyobj function 11-37
- ctranspose function 11-38

## D

- Data property 9-2
- data type override 5-12
- DataType property 9-17
- DataTypeMode property 9-17
- DataTypeOverride property 9-14
- dec function 11-39
- demons 1-9
- denormalmax function 11-40
- denormalmin function 11-41
- diag function 11-42
- disp function 11-43
- display preferences
  - setting 5-5
- display settings 1-6
- div function 11-44
- double function 11-47
- double property 9-2

## E

- Embedded MATLAB
  - Fixed-Point Toolbox support 8-13

- using with Model Explorer and fixed-point models 8-18
- end function 11-48
- eps function 11-49
- eq function 11-50
- errorbar function 11-51
- etreeplot function 11-52
- exponentbias function 11-53
- exponentlength function 11-54
- exponentmax function 11-55
- exponentmin function 11-56
- ezcontour function 11-57
- ezcontourf function 11-58
- ezmesh function 11-59
- ezplot function 11-60
- ezplot3 function 11-61
- ezpolar function 11-62
- ezsurf function 11-63
- ezsurfz function 11-64

## F

- feather function 11-65
- fi function 11-66
- fi objects
  - constructing 3-2
  - properties
    - bin 9-2
    - Data 9-2
    - double 9-2
    - hex 9-3
    - int 9-3
    - NumericType 9-3
    - oct 9-5
- fimath function 11-73
- fimath objects 2-14
  - constructing 4-2

- properties
  - CastBeforeSum 9-6
  - MaxProductWordLength 9-6
  - MaxSumWordLength 9-6
  - OverflowMode 9-6
  - ProductBias 9-7
  - ProductFixedExponent 9-7
  - ProductFractionLength 9-7
  - ProductMode 9-7
  - ProductSlope 9-9
  - ProductSlopeAdjustmentFactor 9-9
  - ProductWordLength 9-9
  - RoundMode 9-10
  - setting in the Model Explorer 4-7
  - SumBias 9-10
  - SumFixedExponent 9-10
  - SumFractionLength 9-11
  - SumMode 9-11
  - SumSlope 9-12
  - SumSlopeAdjustmentFactor 9-13
  - SumWordLength 9-13
- setting properties in the Model Explorer 4-7
- fimath property 9-2
- FimathDisplay property 9-14
- fiobjects
  - properties
    - fimath 9-2
- fipref function 11-76
- fipref objects
  - constructing 5-2
  - properties
    - DataTypeOverride 9-14
    - FimathDisplay 9-14
    - LoggingMode 9-14
    - NumberDisplay 9-15
    - NumericTypeDisplay 9-15
- fixed-point arithmetic 4-9
- fixed-point data
  - reading from workspace 8-2

- writing to workspace 8-2
- fixed-point data types
  - addition 2-10
  - arithmetic operations 2-8
  - casts 2-17
  - complex multiplication 2-11
  - modular arithmetic 2-8
  - multiplication 2-11
  - overflow handling 2-5
  - precision 2-5
  - range 2-5
  - rounding 2-6
  - saturation 2-5
  - scaling 2-4
  - subtraction 2-10
  - two's complement 2-9
  - wrapping 2-5
- fixed-point math 4-9
- fixed-point models
  - Embedded MATLAB support 8-13
- fixed-point run-time API 8-6
- fixed-point signal logging 8-6
- Fixed-Point Toolbox
  - Embedded MATLAB support 8-13
- FixedExponent property 9-18
- format
  - rat 9-16
- Format property 9-21
- fplot function 11-78
- fractionlength function 11-79
- FractionLength property 9-19
- function
  - line 11-120
- functions
  - abs 11-2
  - add 11-5
  - all 11-7
  - and 11-8
  - any 11-9
  - area 11-10
  - bar 11-11
  - barh 11-12
  - bin 11-13
  - bin2num 11-14
  - bitand 11-16
  - bitcmp 11-17
  - bitget 11-18
  - bitor 11-19
  - bitset 11-20
  - bitshift 11-21
  - bitxor 11-23
  - buffer 11-24
  - clabel 11-25
  - comet 11-26
  - comet3 11-27
  - compass 11-28
  - complex 11-29
  - coneplot 11-30
  - conj 11-31
  - contour 11-32
  - contour3 11-33
  - contourc 11-34
  - contourf 11-35
  - convergent 11-36
  - copyobj 11-37
  - ctranspose 11-38
  - dec 11-39
  - denormalmax 11-40
  - denormalmin 11-41
  - diag 11-42
  - disp 11-43
  - div 11-44
  - double 11-47
  - end 11-48
  - eps 11-49
  - eq 11-50
  - errorbar 11-51
  - etreeplot 11-52
  - exponentbias 11-53
  - exponentlength 11-54

exponentmax 11-55  
exponentmin 11-56  
ezcontour 11-57  
ezcontourf 11-58  
ezmesh 11-59  
ezplot 11-60  
ezplot3 11-61  
ezpolar 11-62  
ezsurf 11-63  
ezsurfz 11-64  
feather 11-65  
fi 11-66  
fimath 11-73  
fipref 11-76  
fplot 11-78  
fractionlength 11-79  
ge 11-80  
get 11-81  
gplot 11-82  
gt 11-83  
hankel 11-84  
hex 11-85  
hex2num 11-86  
hist 11-87  
histc 11-88  
horzcat 11-89  
imag 11-90  
inspect 11-92  
int 11-93  
int16 11-96  
int32 11-97  
int8 11-95  
intmax 11-98  
intmin 11-99  
ipermute 11-100  
iscolumn 11-101  
isempty 11-102  
isequal 11-103  
isfi 11-104  
isfinite 11-106  
isinf 11-107  
isnan 11-108  
isnumeric 11-109  
isobject 11-111  
isreal 11-113  
isrow 11-114  
isscalar 11-115  
assigned 11-116  
isvector 11-117  
le 11-118  
length 11-119  
logical 11-121  
loglog 11-122  
lowerbound 11-123  
lsb 11-124  
lt 11-125  
max 11-126  
maxlog 11-127  
mesh 11-128  
meshc 11-129  
meshz 11-130  
min 11-131  
minlog 11-132  
minus 11-133  
mpy 11-134  
mtimes 11-136  
ndims 11-137  
ne 11-138  
noperations 11-139  
not 11-140  
noverflows 11-141  
num2bin 11-142  
num2hex 11-143  
num2int 11-145  
numberofelements 11-146  
numerictype 11-147  
nunderflows 11-151  
oct 11-152  
or 11-153  
patch 11-154

pcolor 11-155  
permute 11-156  
plot 11-157  
plot3 11-158  
plotmatrix 11-159  
plotyy 11-160  
plus 11-161  
polar 11-162  
pow2 11-163  
quantize 11-165  
quantizer 11-168  
quiver 11-172  
quiver3 11-173  
randquant 11-174  
range 11-176  
real 11-178  
realmax 11-179  
realmin 11-181  
repmat 11-182  
reset 11-185  
resetlog 11-186  
reshape 11-187  
rgbplot 11-188  
ribbon 11-189  
rose 11-190  
round 11-191  
savefigpref 11-193  
scatter 11-194  
scatter3 11-195  
sdec 11-196  
semilogx 11-197  
semilogy 11-198  
set 11-199  
sign 11-200  
single 11-201  
size 11-202  
slice 11-203  
spy 11-204  
squeeze 11-205  
stairs 11-206  
stem 11-207  
stem3 11-208  
streamribbon 11-209  
streamslice 11-210  
streamtube 11-211  
stripscaling 11-212  
sub 11-213  
subsasgn 11-215  
subsref 11-218  
sum 11-219  
surf 11-220  
surfc 11-221  
surfl 11-222  
surfnorm 11-223  
text 11-224  
times 11-225  
toeplitz 11-226  
tostring 11-227  
transpose 11-228  
treemap 11-229  
tril 11-230  
trimesh 11-231  
triplot 11-232  
trisurf 11-233  
triu 11-234  
uint16 11-236  
uint32 11-237  
uint8 11-235  
uminus 11-238  
uplus 11-239  
upperbound 11-240  
vertcat 11-241  
voronoi 11-242  
voronoin 11-243  
waterfall 11-244  
wordlength 11-245  
xlim 11-246  
ylim 11-247  
zlim 11-248

**G**

ge function 11-80  
get function 11-81  
gplot function 11-82  
gt function 11-83

**H**

hankel function 11-84  
help  
    getting 1-4  
hex function 11-85  
hex property 9-3  
hex2num function 11-86  
hist function 11-87  
histc function 11-88  
horzcat function 11-89

**I**

imag function 11-90  
inspect function 11-92  
int function 11-93  
int property 9-3  
int16 function 11-96  
int32 function 11-97  
int8 function 11-95  
interoperability  
    fi objects with Filter Design Toolbox 8-32  
    fi objects with Signal Processing  
        Blockset 8-8  
    fi objects with Simulink 8-2  
    Fixed-Point Toolbox with Embedded  
        MATLAB 8-13  
intmax function 11-98  
intmin function 11-99  
ipermute function 11-100  
iscolumn function 11-101  
isempty function 11-102  
isequal function 11-103

isfi function 11-104  
isfinite function 11-106  
isinf function 11-107  
isnan function 11-108  
isnumeric function 11-109  
isobject function 11-111  
isreal function 11-113  
isrow function 11-114  
isscalar function 11-115  
assigned function 11-116  
isvector function 11-117

**L**

le function 11-118  
length function 11-119  
line function 11-120  
logging  
    overflows and underflows 5-7  
logging modes  
    setting 5-7  
LoggingMode property 9-14  
logical function 11-121  
loglog function 11-122  
lowerbound function 11-123  
lsb function 11-124  
lt function 11-125

**M**

math  
    with [Slope Bias] signals 4-13  
max function 11-126  
maxlog function 11-127  
MaxProductWordLength property 9-6  
MaxSumWordLength property 9-6  
mesh function 11-128  
meshc function 11-129  
meshz function 11-130  
min function 11-131



minlog function 11-132  
 minus function 11-133  
 Mode property 9-21  
 Model Explorer
 

- setting embedded.fimath properties 4-7
- setting embedded.numericitytype
  - properties 6-8
- using with fixed-point Embedded
  - MATLAB 8-18

modular arithmetic 2-8  
 mpy function 11-134  
 mtimes function 11-136  
 multiplication
 

- fixed-point 2-11

## N

ndims function 11-137  
 ne function 11-138  
 nopnerations function 11-139  
 not function 11-140  
 noverflows function 11-141  
 num2bin function 11-142  
 num2hex function 11-143  
 num2int function 11-145  
 NumberDisplay property 9-15  
 numberofelements function 11-146  
 numericitytype function 11-147  
 numericitytype objects
 

- constructing 6-2

properties
 

- Bias 9-17
- DataType 9-17
- DataTypeMode 9-17
- FixedExponent 9-18
- FractionLength 9-19
- Scaling 9-19
- setting in the Model Explorer 6-8
- Signed 9-19
- Slope 9-20
- SlopeAdjustmentFactor 9-20
- WordLength 9-20
- setting properties in the Model
  - Explorer 6-8

NumericType property 9-3  
 NumericTypeDisplay property 9-15  
 nunderflows function 11-151

## O

oct function 11-152  
 oct property 9-5  
 one's complement 2-10  
 or function 11-153  
 overflow handling 2-5
 

- compared with ANSI C 2-25

OverflowMode property 9-6 9-22  
 overflows
 

- logging 5-7

## P

padding 2-18  
 patch function 11-154  
 pcolor function 11-155  
 permute function 11-156  
 plot function 11-157  
 plot3 function 11-158  
 plotmatrix function 11-159  
 ploty function 11-160

- plus function 11-161
  - polar function 11-162
  - pow2 function 11-163
  - precision
    - fixed-point data types 2-5
  - ProductBias property 9-7
  - ProductFixedExponent property 9-7
  - ProductFractionLength property 9-7
  - ProductMode property 9-7
  - ProductSlope property 9-9
  - ProductSlopeAdjustmentFactor property 9-9
  - ProductWordLength property 9-9
  - properties
    - Bias, numerictype objects 9-17
    - bin, fi objects 9-2
    - CastBeforeSum, fimath objects 9-6
    - Data, fi objects 9-2
    - DataType, numerictype objects 9-17
    - DataTypeMode, numerictype objects 9-17
    - DataTypeOverride, fipref objects 9-14
    - double, fi objects 9-2
    - fimath, fi objects 9-2
    - FimathDisplay, fipref objects 9-14
    - FixedExponent, numerictype objects 9-18
    - Format, quantizers 9-21
    - FractionLength, numerictype objects 9-19
    - hex, fi objects 9-3
    - int, fi objects 9-3
    - LoggingMode, fipref objects 9-14
    - MaxProductWordLength, fimathobjects 9-6
    - MaxSumWordLength, fimath objects 9-6
    - Mode, quantizers 9-21
    - NumberDisplay, fipref objects 9-15
    - NumericType, fi objects 9-3
    - NumericTypeDisplay, fipref objects 9-15
    - oct, fi objects 9-5
    - OverflowMode, fimath objects 9-6
    - OverflowMode, quantizers 9-22
    - ProductBias, fimath objects 9-7
    - ProductFixedExponent, fimath objects 9-7
    - ProductFractionLength, fimath objects 9-7
    - ProductMode, fimath objects 9-7
    - ProductSlope, fimath objects 9-9
    - ProductSlopeAdjustmentFactor, fimath objects 9-9
    - ProductWordLength, fimath objects 9-9
    - RoundMode, fimath objects 9-10
    - RoundMode, quantizers 9-23
    - Scaling, numerictype objects 9-19
    - Signed, numerictype objects 9-19
    - Slope, numerictype objects 9-20
    - SlopeAdjustmentFactor, numerictype objects 9-20
    - SumBias, fimath objects 9-10
    - SumFixedExponent, fimath objects 9-10
    - SumFractionLength, fimath objects 9-11
    - SumMode, fimath objects 9-11
    - SumSlope, fimath objects 9-12
    - SumSlopeAdjustmentFactor, fimath objects 9-13
    - SumWordLength, fimath objects 9-13
    - WordLength, numerictype objects 9-20
  - property values
    - quantizer objects 7-3
- Q**
- quantize function 11-165
  - quantizer function 11-168
  - quantizer objects
    - constructing 7-2
    - property values 7-3
  - quantizers

- properties
  - Format 9-21
  - Mode 9-21
  - OverflowMode 9-22
  - RoundMode 9-23
- quiver function 11-172
- quiver3 function 11-173

## R

- randquant function 11-174
- range
  - fixed-point data types 2-5
- range function 11-176
- rat format 9-16
- reading fixed-point data from workspace 8-2
- real function 11-178
- realmax function 11-179
- realmin function 11-181
- repmat function 11-182
- reset function 11-185
- resetlog function 11-186
- reshape function 11-187
- rgbplot function 11-188
- ribbon function 11-189
- rose function 11-190
- round function 11-191
- rounding
  - fixed-point data types 2-6
- RoundMode property 9-10 9-23
- run-time API
  - fixed-point data 8-6

## S

- saturation 2-5
- savefipref function 11-193
- scaling 2-4
- Scaling property 9-19
- scatter function 11-194

- scatter3 function 11-195
- sdec function 11-196
- semilogx function 11-197
- semilogy function 11-198
- set function 11-199
- sign function 11-200
- signal logging
  - fixed-point 8-6
- Signed property 9-19
- single function 11-201
- size function 11-202
- slice function 11-203
- [Slope Bias] arithmetic 4-13
- Slope property 9-20
- SlopeAdjustmentFactor property 9-20
- spy function 11-204
- squeeze function 11-205
- stairs function 11-206
- stem function 11-207
- stem3 function 11-208
- streamribbon function 11-209
- streamslice function 11-210
- streamtube function 11-211
- stripscaling function 11-212
- sub function 11-213
- subsasgn function 11-215
- subsref function 11-218
- sum function 11-219
- SumBias property 9-10
- SumFixedExponent property 9-10
- SumFractionLength property 9-11
- SumMode property 9-11
- SumSlope property 9-12
- SumSlopeAdjustmentFactor property 9-13
- SumWordLength property 9-13
- surf function 11-220
- surfc function 11-221
- surf1 function 11-222
- surfnorm function 11-223

**T**

text function 11-224  
times function 11-225  
toeplitz function 11-226  
tostring function 11-227  
transpose function 11-228  
treemap function 11-229  
tril function 11-230  
trimesh function 11-231  
tripplot function 11-232  
trisurf function 11-233  
triu function 11-234  
two's complement 2-9

**U**

uint16 function 11-236  
uint32 function 11-237  
uint8 function 11-235  
uminus function 11-238  
unary conversions 2-22  
underflows  
    logging 5-7  
uplus function 11-239  
upperbound function 11-240

**V**

vertcat function 11-241  
voronoi function 11-242  
voronoin function 11-243

**W**

waterfall function 11-244  
wordlength function 11-245  
WordLength property 9-20  
wrapping  
    fixed-point data types 2-5  
writing fixed-point data to workspace 8-2

**X**

xlim function 11-246

**Y**

ylim function 11-247

**Z**

zlim function 11-248